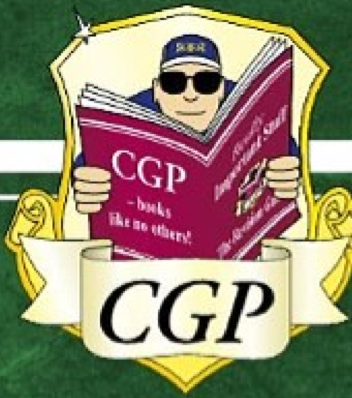
CGP


CGP
– books like no others!
CGP

GCSE Biology

For AQA (Grade 9-1)

The Revision Guide

What to Expect in the Exams

Before you get cracking with your revision, here's a handy guide to what you'll have to face in the exams — and the special features of this book that we've included especially to help you. You're welcome.

① Topics are Covered in Different Papers

For GCSE Biology, you'll sit two exam papers at the end of your course.

Paper	Time	No. of marks	Topics Assessed
1	1 hr 45 mins	100	1, 2, 3 and 4
2	1 hr 45 mins	100	5, 6 and 7

You're expected to know the basic concepts of biology in both papers.

② There are Different Question Types

In each exam, you'll be expected to answer a mixture of multiple choice questions, structured questions, questions that have short, closed answers as well as open response questions.

For some open response questions, you'll be marked on the overall quality of your answer, not just its scientific content. So...

Always make sure:

- You answer the question fully.
- You include detailed, relevant information.
- Your answer is clear and has a logical structure.

③ You'll be Tested on your Maths...

At least 10% of the total marks for GCSE Biology will come from questions that test your maths skills. For these questions, always remember to:

- Show your working — you could get marks for this, even if your final answer's wrong.
- Check that the units of your answer are the same as the ones they asked for in the question.
- Make sure your answer is given to an appropriate number of significant figures.

EXAMPLE:

Look out for these worked examples in this book — they show you maths skills you'll need in the exam.

④ ...and on your Practical Skills

Whenever one of the required practical activities crops up in this book, it's marked up like this...

PRACTICAL

...and there's a whole section on Practical Skills on pages 126-130.

- GCSE Biology contains 10 required practical activities that you'll do during the course. You can be asked about these, and the practical skills involved in them, in the exams.
- At least 15% of the total marks will be for questions that test your understanding of the practical activities and practical skills.
- For example, you might be asked to comment on the design of an experiment (the apparatus and method), make predictions, analyse or interpret results... Pretty much anything to do with planning and carrying out the investigations.

⑤ You'll need to know about Working Scientifically

Working Scientifically is all about how science is applied in the outside world by real scientists.

For example, you might be asked about ways that scientists communicate an idea to get their point across without being biased, or about the limitations of a scientific theory.

Working Scientifically is covered on pages 1-10.

You need to think about the situation that you've been given and use all your scientific savvy to answer the question. Always read the question and any data you've been given really carefully before you start writing your answer.

Get organ-ised for Biology with CGP...

There's a lot to learn in GCSE Biology, that's for sure. Luckily, this CGP book explains the facts, theory and practical skills you'll need — with practice questions on each page to test you on what you've learned.

CGP — still the best! ☺

Our sole aim here at CGP is to produce the highest quality books — carefully written, immaculately presented and dangerously close to being funny.

Then we work our socks off to get them out to you — at the cheapest possible prices.

Contents

Working Scientifically

The Scientific Method 1
Communication & Issues Created by Science 2
Risk 3
Designing Investigations 4
Collecting Data 5
Processing and Presenting Data 6
Units and Equations 8
Drawing Conclusions 9
Uncertainties and Evaluations 10

Topic 1 — Cell Biology

Cells 11
Microscopy 12
More on Microscopy 13
Cell Differentiation and Specialisation 14
Chromosomes and Mitosis 15
Binary Fission 16
Culturing Microorganisms 17
Stem Cells 19
Diffusion 20
Osmosis 21
Active Transport 22
Exchange Surfaces 23
Exchanging Substances 24
More on Exchanging Substances 25
Revision Questions for Topic 1 26

Topic 2 — Organisation

Cell Organisation 27
Enzymes 28
Investigating Enzymatic Reactions 29
Enzymes and Digestion 30
More on Enzymes and Digestion 31
Food Tests 32
The Lungs 33
Circulatory System — The Heart 34
Circulatory System — Blood Vessels 35
Circulatory System — Blood 36
Cardiovascular Disease 37
More on Cardiovascular Disease 38
Health and Disease 39
Risk Factors for Non-Communicable Diseases 40
Cancer 41
Plant Cell Organisation 42
Transpiration and Translocation 43
Transpiration and Stomata 44
Revision Questions for Topic 2 45

Topic 3 — Infection and Response

Communicable Disease 46
Viral, Fungal and Protist Diseases 47
Bacterial Diseases and Preventing Disease 48
Fighting Disease 49
Fighting Disease — Vaccination 50
Fighting Disease — Drugs 51
Developing Drugs 52
Monoclonal Antibodies 53
More on Monoclonal Antibodies 54
Plant Diseases and Defences 55
Revision Questions for Topic 3 56

Topic 4 — Bioenergetics

Photosynthesis and Limiting Factors 57
The Rate of Photosynthesis 58
Respiration and Metabolism 61
Aerobic and Anaerobic Respiration 62
Exercise 63
Revision Questions for Topic 4 64

Topic 5 — Homeostasis and Response

Homeostasis 65
The Nervous System 66
Synapses and Reflexes 67
Investigating Reaction Time 68
The Brain 69
The Eye 70
Correcting Vision Defects 71
Controlling Body Temperature 72
The Endocrine System 73
Controlling Blood Glucose 74
The Kidneys 75
Kidney Failure 76
Puberty and the Menstrual Cycle 77
Controlling Fertility 78
More on Controlling Fertility 79
Adrenaline and Thyroxine 80
Plant Hormones 81
Commercial Uses of Plant Hormones 82
Revision Questions for Topic 5 83

Topic 6 — Inheritance, Variation and Evolution

DNA ... 84
The Structure of DNA and Protein Synthesis ... 85
Mutations ... 86
Reproduction ... 87
Meiosis ... 88
More on Reproduction ... 89
X and Y Chromosomes ... 90
Genetic Diagrams ... 91
More Genetic Diagrams ... 92
Inherited Disorders ... 93
The Work of Mendel ... 94
Variation ... 95
Evolution ... 96
More About Evolution ... 97
Selective Breeding ... 98
Genetic Engineering ... 99
Cloning ... 100
Fossils ... 101
Speciation ... 102
Antibiotic-Resistant Bacteria ... 103
Classification ... 104
Revision Questions for Topic 6 ... 105

Topic 7 — Ecology

Competition ... 106
Abiotic and Biotic Factors ... 107
Adaptations ... 108
Food Chains ... 109
Using Quadrats ... 110
Using Transects ... 111
Environmental Change & The Water Cycle ... 112
The Carbon Cycle ... 113
Decay ... 114
Investigating Decay ... 115
Biodiversity and Waste Management ... 116
Global Warming ... 117
Deforestation and Land Use ... 118
Maintaining Ecosystems and Biodiversity ... 119
Trophic Levels ... 120
Pyramids of Biomass ... 121
Biomass Transfer ... 122
Food Security and Farming ... 123
Biotechnology ... 124
Revision Questions for Topic 7 ... 125

Practical Skills

Measuring Substances ... 126
Heating, Safety and Ethics ... 127
Potometers and Microscopes ... 128
Sampling ... 129
Comparing Results ... 130

Answers ... 131
Index ... 134

Published by CGP

From original material by Richard Parsons

Editors: Charlotte Burrows, Katherine Faudemer, Chris McGarry and Sarah Pattison

Contributor: Paddy Gannon

BAR45DF

With thanks to Hayley Thompson and Sophie Anderson for the proofreading.

Clipart from Corel®

Text, design, layout and original illustrations © Coordination Group Publications Ltd (CGP) 2016
All rights reserved.

0800 1712 712 • www.cgpbooks.co.uk

The Scientific Method

This section isn't about how to 'do' science — but it does show you the way most scientists work.

Scientists Come Up With Hypotheses — Then Test Them

Hundreds of years ago, we thought demons caused illness.

1) Scientists try to explain things. They start by observing something they don't understand.
2) They then come up with a hypothesis — a possible explanation for what they've observed.
3) The next step is to test whether the hypothesis might be right or not. This involves making a prediction based on the hypothesis and testing it by gathering evidence (i.e. data) from investigations. If evidence from experiments backs up a prediction, you're a step closer to figuring out if the hypothesis is true.

Several Scientists Will Test a Hypothesis

Then we thought it was caused by 'bad blood' (and treated it with leeches).

1) Normally, scientists share their findings in peer-reviewed journals, or at conferences.
2) Peer-review is where other scientists check results and scientific explanations to make sure they're 'scientific' (e.g. that experiments have been done in a sensible way) before they're published. It helps to detect false claims, but it doesn't mean that findings are correct — just that they're not wrong in any obvious way.
3) Once other scientists have found out about a hypothesis, they'll start basing their own predictions on it and carry out their own experiments. They'll also try to reproduce the original experiments to check the results — and if all the experiments in the world back up the hypothesis, then scientists start to think the hypothesis is true.
4) However, if a scientist does an experiment that doesn't fit with the hypothesis (and other scientists can reproduce the results) then the hypothesis may need to be modified or scrapped altogether.

If All the Evidence Supports a Hypothesis, It's Accepted — For Now

Now we've collected more evidence, we know that illnesses that can be spread between people are due to microorganisms.

1) Accepted hypotheses are often referred to as theories. Our currently accepted theories are the ones that have survived this 'trial by evidence' — they've been tested many times over the years and survived.
2) However, theories never become totally indisputable fact. If new evidence comes along that can't be explained using the existing theory, then the hypothesising and testing is likely to start all over again.

Theories Can Involve Different Types of Models

Scientists test models by carrying out experiments to check that the predictions made by the model happen as expected.

1) A representational model is a simplified description or picture of what's going on in real life. Like all models, it can be used to explain observations and make predictions. E.g. the lock and key model of enzyme action is a simplified way of showing how enzymes work (see p.28). It can be used to explain why enzymes only catalyse particular reactions.
2) Computational models use computers to make simulations of complex real-life processes, such as climate change. They're used when there are a lot of different variables (factors that change) to consider, and because you can easily change their design to take into account new data.
3) All models have limitations on what they can explain or predict. Climate change models have several limitations — for example, it's hard to take into account all the biological and chemical processes that influence climate. It can also be difficult to include regional variations in climate.

I'm off to the zoo to test my hippo-thesis…

The scientific method has been developed over time, and many people have helped to develop it. From Aristotle to modern day scientists, lots of people have contributed. And many more are likely to contribute in the future.

Communication & Issues Created by Science

Scientific developments can be great, but they can sometimes raise more questions than they answer...

It's Important to Communicate Scientific Discoveries to the General Public

Some scientific discoveries show that people should change their habits, or they might provide ideas that could be developed into new technology. So scientists need to tell the world about their discoveries.

Gene technologies are used in genetic engineering to produce genetically modified crops. Information about these crops needs to be communicated to farmers who might benefit from growing them and to the general public, so they can make informed decisions about the food they buy and eat.

Scientific Evidence can be Presented in a Biased Way

1) Reports about scientific discoveries in the media (e.g. newspapers or television) aren't peer-reviewed.
2) This means that, even though news stories are often based on data that has been peer-reviewed, the data might be presented in a way that is over-simplified or inaccurate, making it open to misinterpretation.
3) People who want to make a point can sometimes present data in a biased way. (Sometimes without knowing they're doing it.) For example, a scientist might overemphasise a relationship in the data, or a newspaper article might describe details of data supporting an idea without giving any evidence against it.

Scientific Developments are Great, but they can Raise Issues

Scientific knowledge is increased by doing experiments. And this knowledge leads to scientific developments, e.g. new technologies or new advice. These developments can create issues though. For example:

Economic issues: Society can't always afford to do things scientists recommend (e.g. investing in alternative energy sources) without cutting back elsewhere.

Social issues: Decisions based on scientific evidence affect people — e.g. should alcohol be banned (to prevent health problems)? Would the effect on people's lifestyles be acceptable...?

Personal issues: Some decisions will affect individuals. For example, someone might support alternative energy, but object if a wind farm is built next to their house.

Environmental issues: Human activity often affects the natural environment — e.g. genetically modified crops may help us to produce more food — but some people think they could cause environmental problems (see p.99).

Science Can't Answer Every Question — Especially Ethical Ones

1) We don't understand everything. We're always finding out more, but we'll never know all the answers.
2) In order to answer scientific questions, scientists need data to provide evidence for their hypotheses.
3) Some questions can't be answered yet because the data can't currently be collected, or because there's not enough data to support a theory.
4) Eventually, as we get more evidence, we'll answer some of the questions that currently can't be answered, e.g. what the impact of global warming on sea levels will be. But there will always be the "Should we be doing this at all?"-type questions that experiments can't help us to answer...

Think about new drugs which can be taken to boost your 'brain power'.

THE GAZETTE
BRAIN-BOOSTING DRUGS MAKE A MOCKERY OF EXAMS
THE POST
GENIUS PILLS TO BECOME THE NEW COFFEE

- Some people think they're good as they could improve concentration or memory. New drugs could let people think in ways beyond the powers of normal brains.
- Other people say they're bad — they could give you an unfair advantage in exams. And people might be pressured into taking them so that they could work more effectively, and for longer hours.

Tea to milk or milk to tea? — Totally unanswerable by science...

Science can't tell you whether or not you should do something. That's for you and society to decide. But there are tons of questions science might be able to answer, like where life came from and where my superhero socks are.

Risk

By reading this page you are agreeing to the risk of a paper cut or severe drowsiness...

Nothing is Completely Risk-Free

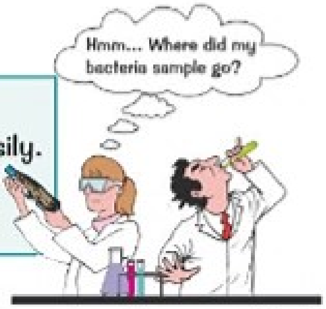
1) A hazard is something that could potentially cause harm.
2) All hazards have a risk attached to them — this is the chance that the hazard will cause harm.
3) The risks of some things seem pretty obvious, or we've known about them for a while, like the risk of causing acid rain by polluting the atmosphere, or of having a car accident when you're travelling in a car.
4) New technology arising from scientific advances can bring new risks, e.g. scientists are unsure whether nanoparticles that are being used in cosmetics and suncream might be harming the cells in our bodies. These risks need to be considered alongside the benefits of the technology, e.g. improved sun protection.
5) You can estimate the size of a risk based on how many times something happens in a big sample (e.g. 100 000 people) over a given period (e.g. a year). For example, you could assess the risk of a driver crashing by recording how many people in a group of 100 000 drivers crashed their cars over a year.
6) To make decisions about activities that involve hazards, we need to take into account the chance of the hazard causing harm, and how serious the consequences would be if it did. If an activity involves a hazard that's very likely to cause harm, with serious consequences if it does, it's considered high risk.

People Make Their Own Decisions About Risk

1) Not all risks have the same consequences, e.g. if you chop veg with a sharp knife you risk cutting your finger, but if you go scuba-diving you risk death. You're much more likely to cut your finger during half an hour of chopping than to die during half an hour of scuba-diving. But most people are happier to accept a higher probability of an accident if the consequences are short-lived and fairly minor.
2) People tend to be more willing to accept a risk if they choose to do something (e.g. go scuba diving), compared to having the risk imposed on them (e.g. having a nuclear power station built next door).
3) People's perception of risk (how risky they think something is) isn't always accurate. They tend to view familiar activities as low-risk and unfamiliar activities as high-risk — even if that's not the case. For example, cycling on roads is often high-risk, but many people are happy to do it because it's a familiar activity. Air travel is actually pretty safe, but a lot of people perceive it as high-risk.
4) People may over-estimate the risk of things with long-term or invisible effects, e.g. ionising radiation.

Investigations Can be Hazardous

1) Hazards from science experiments might include:
   - Microorganisms, e.g. some bacteria can make you ill.
   - Chemicals, e.g. sulfuric acid can burn your skin and alcohols catch fire easily.
   - Fire, e.g. an unattended Bunsen burner is a fire hazard.
   - Electricity, e.g. faulty electrical equipment could give you a shock.


Hmm... Where did my bacteria sample go?

2) Part of planning an investigation is making sure that it's safe.
3) You should always make sure that you identify all the hazards that you might encounter. Then you should think of ways of reducing the risks from the hazards you've identified. For example:
   - If you're working with sulfuric acid, always wear gloves and safety goggles. This will reduce the risk of the acid coming into contact with your skin and eyes.
   - If you're using a Bunsen burner, stand it on a heat proof mat. This will reduce the risk of starting a fire.

You can find out about potential hazards by looking in textbooks, doing some internet research, or asking your teacher.

Not revising — an unacceptable exam hazard...

The world's a dangerous place, but if you can recognise hazards, decide how to reduce their risks, and be happy to accept some risks, you can still have fun. Just maybe don't go skydiving with a great white shark on Friday 13th.

Designing Investigations

Dig out your lab coat and dust down your badly-scratched safety goggles... it's investigation time.

Investigations Produce Evidence to Support or Disprove a Hypothesis

1) Scientists observe things and come up with hypotheses to explain them (see p.1).
You need to be able to do the same. For example:

> Observation: People have big feet and spots. Hypothesis: Having big feet causes spots.

2) To determine whether or not a hypothesis is right, you need to do an investigation to gather evidence. To do this, you need to use your hypothesis to make a prediction — something you think will happen that you can test. E.g. people who have bigger feet will have more spots.
3) Investigations are used to see if there are patterns or relationships between two variables, e.g. to see if there's a pattern or relationship between the variables 'number of spots' and 'size of feet'.

Evidence Needs to be Repeatable, Reproducible and Valid

Investigations include experiments and studies.

1) Repeatable means that if the same person does an experiment again using the same methods and equipment, they'll get similar results.
2) Reproducible means that if someone else does the experiment, or a different method or piece of equipment is used, the results will still be similar.
3) If data is repeatable and reproducible, it's reliable and scientists are more likely to have confidence in it.
4) Valid results are both repeatable and reproducible AND they answer the original question.
They come from experiments that were designed to be a **FAIR TEST**...

To Make an Investigation a Fair Test You Have to Control the Variables

1) In a lab experiment you usually change one variable and measure how it affects another variable.
2) To make it a fair test, everything else that could affect the results should stay the same — otherwise you can't tell if the thing you're changing is causing the results or not.
3) The variable you **CHANGE** is called the **INDEPENDENT** variable.
4) The variable you **MEASURE** when you change the independent variable is the **DEPENDENT** variable.
5) The variables that you **KEEP THE SAME** are called **CONTROL** variables.

> You could find how temperature affects the rate of an enzyme-controlled reaction. The independent variable is the temperature. The dependent variable is the rate of reaction. Control variables include the concentration and amounts of reactants, pH, the time period you measure, etc.

6) Because you can't always control all the variables, you often need to use a control experiment. This is an experiment that's kept under the same conditions as the rest of the investigation, but doesn't have anything done to it. This is so that you can see what happens when you don't change anything at all.

The Bigger the Sample Size the Better

1) Data based on small samples isn't as good as data based on large samples. A sample should represent the whole population (i.e. it should share as many of the characteristics in the population as possible) — a small sample can't do that as well. It's also harder to spot anomalies if your sample size is too small.
2) The bigger the sample size the better, but scientists have to be realistic when choosing how big.
For example, if you were studying how lifestyle affects people's weight it'd be great to study everyone in the UK (a huge sample), but it'd take ages and cost a bomb. It's more realistic to study a thousand people, with a mixture of ages, gender and race.

This is no high street survey — it's a designer investigation...

Not only do you need to be able to plan your own investigations, you should also be able to look at someone else's plan and decide whether or not it needs improving. Those examiners aren't half demanding.

Collecting Data

You've designed the perfect investigation — now it's time to get your hands mucky and collect some data.

Your Data Should be Repeatable, Reproducible, Accurate and Precise

1) To check repeatability you need to repeat the readings and check that the results are similar. You need to repeat each reading at least three times.
2) To make sure your results are reproducible you can cross check them by taking a second set of readings with another instrument (or a different observer).
3) Your data also needs to be ACCURATE. Really accurate results are those that are really close to the true answer. The accuracy of your results usually depends on your method — you need to make sure you're measuring the right thing and that you don't miss anything that should be included in the measurements. E.g. estimating the amount of gas released from a reaction by counting the bubbles isn't very accurate because you might miss some of the bubbles and they might have different volumes. It's more accurate to measure the volume of gas released using a gas syringe.
4) Your data also needs to be PRECISE. Precise results are ones where the data is all really close to the mean (average) of your repeated results (i.e. not spread out).

Brian's result was a curate.

Repeat	Data set 1	Data set 2
1	12	11
2	14	17
3	13	14
Mean	13	14

Data set 1 is more precise than data set 2.

Your Equipment has to be Right for the Job

1) The measuring equipment you use has to be sensitive enough to measure the changes you're looking for. For example, if you need to measure changes of 1 cm^3 you need to use a measuring cylinder that can measure in 1 cm^3 steps — it'd be no good trying with one that only measures in 10 cm^3 steps.
2) The smallest change a measuring instrument can detect is called its RESOLUTION. E.g. some mass balances have a resolution of 1 g, some have a resolution of 0.1 g, and some are even more sensitive.
3) Also, equipment needs to be calibrated by measuring a known value. If there's a difference between the measured and known value, you can use this to correct the inaccuracy of the equipment.

You Need to Look out for Errors and Anomalous Results

1) The results of your experiment will always vary a bit because of RANDOM ERRORS — unpredictable differences caused by things like human errors in measuring. E.g. the errors you make when reading from a measuring cylinder are random. You have to estimate or round the level when it's between two marks — so sometimes your figure will be a bit above the real one, and sometimes it will be a bit below.
2) You can reduce the effect of random errors by taking repeat readings and finding the mean. This will make your results more precise.
3) If a measurement is wrong by the same amount every time, it's called a SYSTEMATIC ERROR. For example, if you measured from the very end of your ruler instead of from the 0 cm mark every time, all your measurements would be a bit small. Repeating the experiment in the exact same way and calculating a mean won't correct a systematic error.
4) Just to make things more complicated, if a systematic error is caused by using equipment that isn't zeroed properly, it's called a ZERO ERROR. For example, if a mass balance always reads 1 gram before you put anything on it, all your measurements will be 1 gram too heavy.
5) You can compensate for some systematic errors if you know about them though, e.g. if your mass balance always reads 1 gram before you put anything on it you can subtract 1 gram from all your results.
6) Sometimes you get a result that doesn't fit in with the rest at all. This is called an ANOMALOUS RESULT. You should investigate it and try to work out what happened. If you can work out what happened (e.g. you measured something totally wrong) you can ignore it when processing your results.

If there's no systematic error, then doing repeats and calculating a mean can make your results more accurate.

Watch what you say to that mass balance — it's very sensitive...

Weirdly, data can be really precise but not very accurate. For example, a fancy piece of lab equipment might give results that are really precise, but if it's not been calibrated properly those results won't be accurate.

Processing and Presenting Data

Processing your data means doing some calculations with it to make it more useful. Once you've done that, you can present your results in a nice chart or graph to help you spot any patterns in your data.

Data Needs to be Organised

Tables are dead useful for organising data. When you draw a table use a ruler and make sure each column has a heading (including the units).

You Might Have to Process Your Data

1) When you've done repeats of an experiment you should always calculate the mean (a type of average). To do this add together all the data values and divide by the total number of values in the sample.
2) You might also need to calculate the range (how spread out the data is). To do this find the largest number and subtract the smallest number from it.

Ignore anomalous results when calculating these.

EXAMPLE: The results of an experiment to find the volume of gas produced in an enzyme-controlled reaction are shown below. Calculate the mean volume and the range.

Repeat 1 (cm^3)	Repeat 2 (cm^3)	Repeat 3 (cm^3)	Mean (cm^3)	Range (cm^3)
28	37	32	$(28 + 37 + 32) \div 3 = 32$	$37 - 28 = 9$

3) You might also need to calculate the median or mode (two more types of average). To calculate the median, put all your data in numerical order — the median is the middle value. The number that appears most often in a data set is the mode.

E.g. If you have the data set: 1 2 1 1 3 4 2
The median is: 1 1 1 2 2 3 4. The mode is 1 because 1 appears most often.

If you have an even number of values, the median is halfway between the middle two values.

Round to the Lowest Number of Significant Figures

The first significant figure of a number is the first digit that's not zero. The second and third significant figures come straight after (even if they're zeros). You should be aware of significant figures in calculations.

1) In any calculation, you should round the answer to the lowest number of significant figures (s.f.) given.
2) Remember to write down how many significant figures you've rounded to after your answer.
3) If your calculation has multiple steps, only round the final answer, or it won't be as accurate.

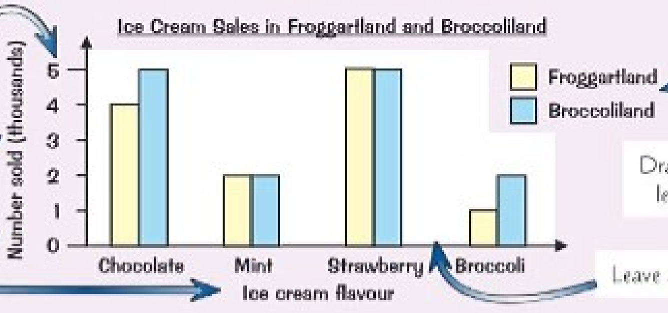
EXAMPLE: A plant produces 10.2 cm^3 of oxygen in 6.5 minutes whilst photosynthesising. Calculate the rate of photosynthesis.

$$\text{rate} = \underbrace{10.2}_{3\text{ s.f.}}\ \text{cm}^3 \div \underbrace{6.5}_{2\text{ s.f.}}\ \text{min} = 1.5692... = 1.6\ \text{cm}^3/\text{min}\ (2\text{ s.f.})$$

Final answer should be rounded to 2 s.f.

If Your Data Comes in Categories, Present It in a Bar Chart

1) If the independent variable is categoric (comes in distinct categories, e.g. flower colour, blood group) you should use a bar chart to display the data.
2) You also use them if the independent variable is discrete (the data can be counted in chunks, where there's no in-between value, e.g. number of bacteria is discrete because you can't have half a bacterium).
3) There are some golden rules you need to follow for drawing bar charts:



The scale needs to be linear (there should be equal values for each division).

Remember to include the units.

Label both axes.

If you've got more than one set of data include a key.

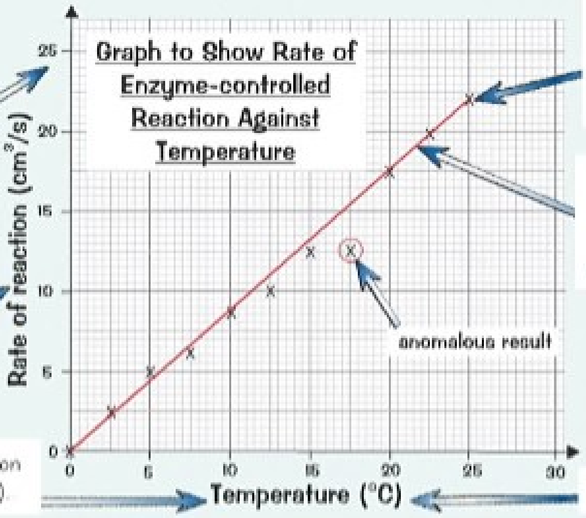
Draw it nice and big (covering at least half of the graph paper).

Leave a gap between different categories.

If Your Data is Continuous, Plot a Graph

If both variables are continuous (numerical data that can have any value within a range, e.g. length, volume, temperature) you should use a graph to display the data.

Here are the rules for plotting points on a graph:

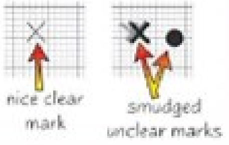


Use the biggest data values you've got to draw a sensible scale on your axes. Here, the highest rate of reaction is 22 cm^3/s, so it makes sense to label the y-axis up to 25 cm^3/s.

The dependent variable goes on the y-axis (the vertical one).

The independent variable goes on the x-axis (the horizontal one).

To plot points, use a sharp pencil and make neat little crosses (don't do blobs).



If you're asked to draw a line (or curve) of best fit, draw a line through or as near to as many points as possible, ignoring any anomalous results. Don't join the crosses up.

Draw it nice and big (covering at least half of the graph paper).

Remember to include the units.

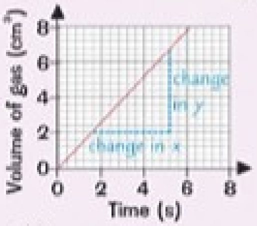
Graphs Can Give You a Lot of Information About Your Data

1) The gradient (slope) of a graph tells you how quickly the dependent variable changes if you change the independent variable.

$$\text{gradient} = \frac{\text{change in } y}{\text{change in } x}$$

You can use this method to calculate any rates from a graph, not just the rate of a reaction. Just remember that a rate is how much something changes over time, so x needs to be the time.

This graph shows the volume of gas produced in a reaction against time. The graph is linear (it's a straight line graph), so you can simply calculate the gradient of the line to find out the rate of reaction.



1) To calculate the gradient, pick two points on the line that are easy to read and a good distance apart.
2) Draw a line down from one of the points and a line across from the other to make a triangle. The line drawn down the side of the triangle is the change in y and the line across the bottom is the change in x.

Change in y = 6.8 – 2.0 = 4.8 cm^3 Change in x = 5.2 – 1.6 = 3.6 s

$$\text{Rate} = \text{gradient} = \frac{\text{change in } y}{\text{change in } x} = \frac{4.8 \text{ cm}^3}{3.6 \text{ s}} = 1.3 \text{ cm}^3/\text{s or } 1.3 \text{ cm}^3\text{s}^{-1}$$

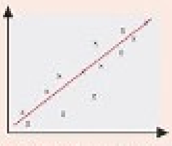
The units of the gradient are (units of y)/(units of x). cm^3/s can also be written as cm^3s^{-1}.

If you've got a curved graph, you can find the rate at any point by drawing a tangent — a straight line that touches a single point on a curve. You can then find the gradient of the tangent in the usual way, to give you the rate at that point.

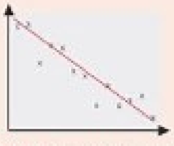
2) The intercept of a graph is where the line of best fit crosses one of the axes. The x-intercept is where the line of best fit crosses the x-axis and the y-intercept is where it crosses the y-axis.

Graphs Show the Relationship Between Two Variables

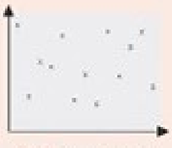
1) You can get three types of correlation (relationship) between variables:
2) Just because there's correlation, it doesn't mean the change in one variable is causing the change in the other — there might be other factors involved (see page 9).



POSITIVE correlation: as one variable increases the other increases.



INVERSE (negative) correlation: as one variable increases the other decreases.



NO correlation: no relationship between the two variables.

I love eating apples — I call it core elation...

Science is all about finding relationships between things. And I don't mean that chemists gather together in corners to discuss whether or not Devini and Sebastian might be a couple... though they probably do that too.

Units and Equations

Graphs and maths skills are all very well, but the numbers don't mean much if you can't get the units right.

SI Units Are Used All Round the World

1) It wouldn't be all that useful if I defined volume in terms of bath tubs, you defined it in terms of egg-cups and my pal Sarwat defined it in terms of balloons — we'd never be able to compare our data.
2) To stop this happening, scientists have come up with a set of standard units, called SI units, that all scientists use to measure their data. Here are some SI units you'll see in Biology:

Quantity	SI Base Unit
mass	kilogram, kg
length	metre, m
time	second, s

Scaling Prefixes Can Be Used for Large and Small Quantities

1) Quantities come in a huge range of sizes. For example, the volume of a swimming pool might be around 2 000 000 000 cm^3, while the volume of a cup is around 250 cm^3.
2) To make the size of numbers more manageable, larger or smaller units are used. These are the SI base unit (e.g. metres) with a prefix in front:

prefix	tera (T)	giga (G)	mega (M)	kilo (k)	deci (d)	centi (c)	milli (m)	micro (μ)	nano (n)
multiple of unit	10^{12}	10^{9}	1 000 000 (10^{6})	1000	0.1	0.01	0.001	0.000001 (10^{-6})	10^{-9}

3) These prefixes tell you how much bigger or smaller a unit is than the base unit. So one kilometre is one thousand metres.
4) To swap from one unit to another, all you need to know is what number you have to divide or multiply by to get from the original unit to the new unit — this is called the conversion factor.

The conversion factor is the number of times the smaller unit goes into the larger unit.

- To go from a bigger unit (like m) to a smaller unit (like cm), you multiply by the conversion factor.
- To go from a smaller unit (like g) to a bigger unit (like kg), you divide by the conversion factor.

5) Here are some conversions that'll be useful for GCSE biology:

Mass can have units of kg and g.

$$\begin{tikzcd} kg \arrow[r, bend left, "\times 1000"] & g \arrow[l, bend left, "\div 1000"] \end{tikzcd}$$

Length can have lots of units, including mm, μm and nm.

$$\begin{tikzcd} mm \arrow[r, bend left, "\times 1000"] & \mu m \arrow[l, bend left, "\div 1000"] \arrow[r, bend left, "\times 1000"] & nm \arrow[l, bend left, "\div 1000"] \end{tikzcd}$$

Time can have units of min and s.

$$\begin{tikzcd} min \arrow[r, bend left, "\times 60"] & s \arrow[l, bend left, "\div 60"] \end{tikzcd}$$

Volume can have units of m^3, dm^3 and cm^3.

$$\begin{tikzcd} m^3 \arrow[r, bend left, "\times 1000"] & dm^3 \arrow[l, bend left, "\div 1000"] \arrow[r, bend left, "\times 1000"] & cm^3 \arrow[l, bend left, "\div 1000"] \end{tikzcd}$$

Always Check The Values Used in Equations Have the Right Units

1) Equations (sometimes called formulas) show relationships between variables.
2) To rearrange an equation, make sure that whatever you do to one side of the equation you also do to the other side.

You can find the magnification of something using the equation: magnification = image size ÷ real size (see p.12). You can rearrange this equation to find the image size by multiplying each side by the real size: image size = magnification × real size.

3) To use an equation, you need to know the values of all but one of the variables. Substitute the values you do know into the equation, and do the calculation to work out the final variable.
4) Always make sure the values you put into an equation have the right units. For example, if you're calculating the magnification of something, but your image size is in mm and the real size is in μm, you'll have to convert both measurements into the same unit (either mm or μm) before you start.
5) To make sure your units are correct, it can help to write down the units on each line of your calculation.

I wasn't sure I liked units, but now I'm converted...

It's easy to get in a muddle when converting between units, but there's a handy way to check you've done it right. If you're moving from a smaller unit to a larger unit (e.g. g to kg) the number should get smaller, and vice versa.

Drawing Conclusions

Congratulations — you're nearly at the end of a gruelling investigation, time to draw conclusions.

You Can Only Conclude What the Data Shows and NO MORE

1) Drawing conclusions might seem pretty straightforward — you just look at your data and say what pattern or relationship you see between the dependent and independent variables.

The table on the right shows the heights of pea plant seedlings grown for three weeks with different fertilisers.

Fertiliser	Mean growth / mm
A	13.5
B	19.5
No fertiliser	5.5

CONCLUSION:
Fertiliser B makes pea plant seedlings grow taller over a three week period than fertiliser A.

2) But you've got to be really careful that your conclusion matches the data you've got and doesn't go any further.

You can't conclude that fertiliser B makes any other type of plant grow taller than fertiliser A — the results could be totally different.

3) You also need to be able to use your results to justify your conclusion (i.e. back up your conclusion with some specific data).

Over the three week period, fertiliser B made the pea plants grow 6 mm more on average than fertiliser A.

4) When writing a conclusion you need to refer back to the original hypothesis and say whether the data supports it or not:

The hypothesis for this experiment might have been that adding fertiliser would increase the growth of plants and that different types of fertiliser would affect growth by different amounts. If so, the data supports the hypothesis.

Correlation DOES NOT Mean Cause

If two things are correlated (i.e. there's a relationship between them) it doesn't necessarily mean a change in one variable is causing the change in the other — this is REALLY IMPORTANT — DON'T FORGET IT. There are three possible reasons for a correlation:

1) CHANCE: It might seem strange, but two things can show a correlation purely due to chance.

For example, one study might find a correlation between people's hair colour and how good they are at frisbee. But other scientists don't get a correlation when they investigate it — the results of the first study are just a fluke.

2) LINKED BY A 3RD VARIABLE: A lot of the time it may look as if a change in one variable is causing a change in the other, but it isn't — a third variable links the two things.

For example, there's a correlation between water temperature and shark attacks. This isn't because warmer water makes sharks crazy. Instead, they're linked by a third variable — the number of people swimming (more people swim when the water's hotter, and with more people in the water you get more shark attacks).

3) CAUSE: Sometimes a change in one variable does cause a change in the other. You can only conclude that a correlation is due to cause when you've controlled all the variables that could, just could, be affecting the result.

For example, there's a correlation between smoking and lung cancer. This is because chemicals in tobacco smoke cause lung cancer. This conclusion was only made once other variables (such as age and exposure to other things that cause cancer) had been controlled and shown not to affect people's risk of getting lung cancer.

I conclude that this page is a bit dull…

...although, just because I find it dull doesn't mean that I can conclude it's dull (you might think it's the most interesting thing since that kid got his head stuck in the railings near school). In the exams you could be given a conclusion and asked whether some data supports it — so make sure you understand how far conclusions can go.

Uncertainties and Evaluations

Hurrah! The end of another investigation. Well, now you have to work out all the things you did wrong.

Uncertainty is the Amount of Error Your Measurements Might Have

1) When you repeat a measurement, you often get a slightly different figure each time you do it due to random error. This means that each result has some uncertainty to it.
2) The measurements you make will also have some uncertainty in them due to limits in the resolution of the equipment you use (see page 5).
3) This all means that the mean of a set of results will also have some uncertainty to it. You can calculate the uncertainty of a mean result using the equation:
4) The larger the range, the less precise your results are and the more uncertainty there will be in your results. Uncertainties are shown using the '±' symbol.

The range is the largest value minus the smallest value (p.6).

$$\text{uncertainty} = \frac{\text{range}}{2}$$

EXAMPLE: The table below shows the results of a respiration experiment to determine the volume of carbon dioxide produced. Calculate the uncertainty of the mean.

Repeat	1	2	3	mean
Volume of CO_2 produced (cm^3)	20.1	19.8	20.0	20.0

1) First work out the range:

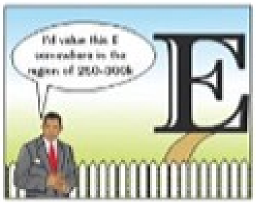
Range = 20.1 – 19.8
= 0.300 cm^3

2) Use the range to find the uncertainty:

Uncertainty = range $\div$ 2 = 0.300 $\div$ 2 = 0.150 cm^3. So the uncertainty of the mean = 20.0 ± 0.150 cm^3

5) Measuring a greater amount of something helps to reduce uncertainty. For example, in a rate of reaction experiment, measuring the amount of product formed over a longer period compared to a shorter period will reduce the percentage uncertainty in your results.

Evaluations — Describe How it Could be Improved


I'd value this E somewhere in the region of 250-300k
E

An evaluation is a critical analysis of the whole investigation.

1) You should comment on the method — was it valid?
Did you control all the other variables to make it a fair test?
2) Comment on the quality of the results — was there enough evidence to reach a valid conclusion? Were the results repeatable, reproducible, accurate and precise?
3) Were there any anomalous results? If there were none then say so. If there were any, try to explain them — were they caused by errors in measurement? Were there any other variables that could have affected the results? You should comment on the level of uncertainty in your results too.
4) All this analysis will allow you to say how confident you are that your conclusion is right.
5) Then you can suggest any changes to the method that would improve the quality of the results, so that you could have more confidence in your conclusion. For example, you might suggest changing the way you controlled a variable, or increasing the number of measurements you took. Taking more measurements at narrower intervals could give you a more accurate result. For example:

Enzymes have an optimum temperature (a temperature at which they work best). Say you do an experiment to find an enzyme's optimum temperature and take measurements at 10 °C, 20 °C, 30 °C, 40 °C and 50 °C. The results of this experiment tell you the optimum is 40 °C. You could then repeat the experiment, taking more measurements around 40 °C to a get a more accurate value for the optimum.

6) You could also make more predictions based on your conclusion, then further experiments could be carried out to test them.

When suggesting improvements to the investigation, always make sure that you say why you think this would make the results better.

Evaluation — next time, I'll make sure I don't burn the lab down...

So there you have it — Working Scientifically. Make sure you know this stuff like the back of your hand. It's not just in the lab that you'll need to know how to work scientifically. You can be asked about it in the exams as well.

Cells

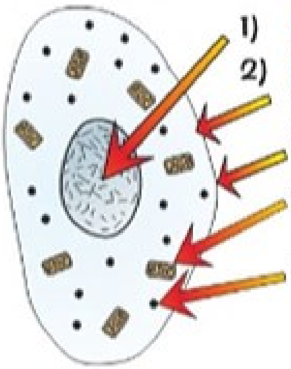
When someone first peered down a microscope at a slice of cork and drew the boxes they saw, little did they know that they'd seen the building blocks of every organism on the planet...

Organisms can be Prokaryotes or Eukaryotes

1) All living things are made of cells.
2) Cells can be either prokaryotic or eukaryotic. Eukaryotic cells are complex and include all animal and plant cells. Prokaryotic cells are smaller and simpler, e.g. bacteria (see below).
3) Eukaryotes are organisms that are made up of eukaryotic cells.
4) A prokaryote is a prokaryotic cell (it's a single-celled organism).

Plant and Animal Cells have Similarities and Differences

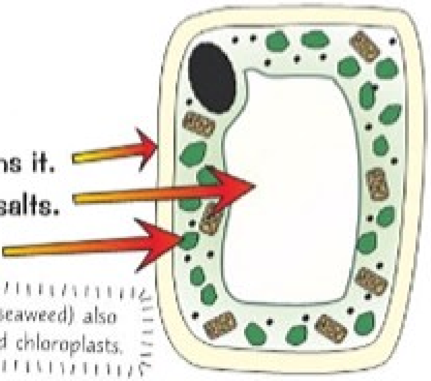
The different parts of a cell are called subcellular structures.
Most animal cells have the following subcellular structures — make sure you know them all:



1) Nucleus — contains genetic material that controls the activities of the cell.
2) Cytoplasm — gel-like substance where most of the chemical reactions happen. It contains enzymes (see page 28) that control these chemical reactions.
3) Cell membrane — holds the cell together and controls what goes in and out.
4) Mitochondria — these are where most of the reactions for aerobic respiration take place (see page 62). Respiration transfers energy that the cell needs to work.
5) Ribosomes — these are where proteins are made in the cell.

Plant cells usually have all the bits that animal cells have, plus a few extra things that animal cells don't have:

1) Rigid cell wall — made of cellulose. It supports the cell and strengthens it.
2) Permanent vacuole — contains cell sap, a weak solution of sugar and salts.
3) Chloroplasts — these are where photosynthesis occurs, which makes food for the plant (see page 57). They contain a green substance called chlorophyll, which absorbs the light needed for photosynthesis.

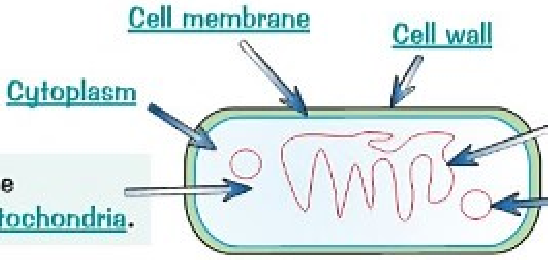


The cells of algae (e.g. seaweed) also have a rigid cell wall and chloroplasts.

Bacterial Cells Are Much Smaller

You might see the sizes of cells written in standard form (see the next page).

Bacteria are prokaryotes. Here's what a bacterial cell might look like:



Bacterial cells don't have a 'true' nucleus — instead they have a single circular strand of DNA that floats freely in the cytoplasm.

Bacteria don't have chloroplasts or mitochondria.

They may also contain one or more small rings of DNA called plasmids.

Cell structures — become an estate agent...

You could get asked to estimate the area of a subcellular structure in your exam. If you do, treat it as a regular shape. For example, if it's close to a rectangle, use the area formula 'area = length × width'.

Q1 Give two differences in structure between prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells. [2 marks]

Microscopy

Microscopes are pretty important for biology. So here's a couple of pages all about them...

Cells are Studied Using Microscopes

1) Microscopes let us see things that we can't see with the naked eye. The microscopy techniques we can use have developed over the years as technology and knowledge have improved.
2) Light microscopes use light and lenses to form an image of a specimen and magnify it (make it look bigger). They let us see individual cells and large subcellular structures, like nuclei.
3) Electron microscopes use electrons instead of light to form an image. They have a much higher magnification than light microscopes.
4) They also have a higher resolution. (Resolution is the ability to distinguish between two points, so a higher resolution gives a sharper image.)
5) Electron microscopes let us see much smaller things in more detail, like the internal structure of mitochondria and chloroplasts. They even let us see tinier things like ribosomes and plasmids.

See the next page for how to use a light microscope.

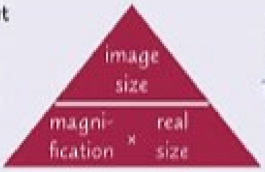
You Need to be Able to Use the Formula for Magnification

You can calculate the magnification of an image using this formula:

$$\text{magnification} = \frac{\text{image size}}{\text{real size}}$$

Image size and real size should have the same units. If they don't, you'll need to convert them first (see page 8).

If you want to work out the image size or the real size of the object, you can rearrange the equation using this formula triangle:



Cover up the thing you're trying to find. The parts you can still see are the formula you need to use.

EXAMPLE: A specimen is 50 μm wide. Calculate the width of the image of the specimen under a magnification of × 100. Give your answer in mm.

1) Rearrange the formula. image size = magnification × real size
2) Fill in the values you know. image size = 100 × 50
3) Remember the units in your answer. = 5000 μm
4) Convert the units. = 5 mm

Remember, to convert from micrometres (μm) to millimetres (mm), you need to divide by 1000 (see p.8). E.g. 5000 μm ÷ 1000 = 5 mm

You Need to Know How to Work With Numbers in Standard Form

1) Because microscopes can see such tiny objects, sometimes it's useful to write numbers in standard form.
2) This is where you change very big or small numbers with lots of zeros into something more manageable, e.g. 0.017 can be written 1.7×10^{-2}.
3) To do this you just need to move the decimal point left or right.
4) The number of places the decimal point moves is then represented by a power of 10 — this is positive if the decimal point's moved to the left, and negative if it's moved to the right.

EXAMPLE: A mitochondrion is approximately 0.0025 mm long. Write this figure in standard form.

1) The first number needs to be between 1 and 10 so the decimal point needs to move after the '2'. 0.0025
2) Count how many places the decimal point has moved — this is the power of 10. Don't forget the minus sign because the decimal point has moved right. 2.5×10^{-3}

Your resolution to revise should be increasing right now...

Keep an eye on the units for that equation — if they're not the same, it just won't work.

Q1 An onion cell is viewed under a microscope with × 100 magnification. The image of the cell is 7.5 mm wide. What is the real width of the onion cell? Give your answer in μm. [2 marks]

More on Microscopy

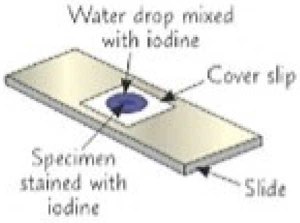
PRACTICAL

It's all very well knowing what microscopes do — you also have to know how to actually use one.

You Need to Prepare Your Slide

If you want to look at a specimen (e.g. plant or animal cells) under a light microscope, you need to put it on a microscope slide first. A slide is a strip of clear glass or plastic onto which the specimen is mounted.

Here's how to prepare a slide to view onion cells:

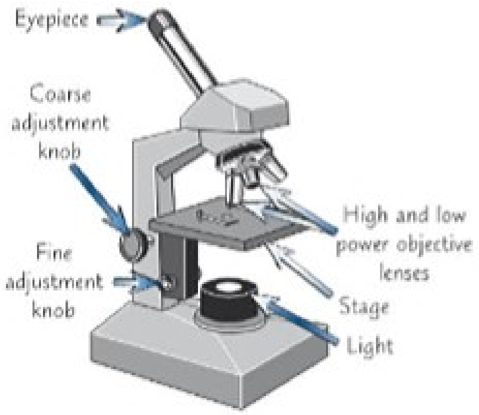


1) Add a drop of water to the middle of a clean slide.
2) Cut up an onion and separate it out into layers. Use tweezers to peel off some epidermal tissue from the bottom of one of the layers.
3) Using the tweezers, place the epidermal tissue into the water on the slide.
4) Add a drop of iodine solution. Iodine solution is a stain. Stains are used to highlight objects in a cell by adding colour to them.
5) Place a cover slip (a square of thin, transparent plastic or glass) on top. To do this, stand the cover slip upright on the slide, next to the water droplet. Then carefully tilt and lower it so it covers the specimen. Try not to get any air bubbles under there — they'll obstruct your view of the specimen.

Use a Light Microscope to Look at Your Slide

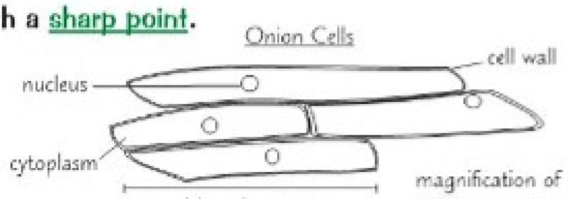
To look at your prepared slides, you need to know how to use a light microscope:

1) Clip the slide you've prepared onto the stage.
2) Select the lowest-powered objective lens (i.e. the one that produces the lowest magnification).
3) Use the coarse adjustment knob to move the stage up to just below the objective lens.
4) Look down the eyepiece. Use the coarse adjustment knob to move the stage downwards until the image is roughly in focus.
5) Adjust the focus with the fine adjustment knob, until you get a clear image of what's on the slide.
6) If you need to see the slide with greater magnification, swap to a higher-powered objective lens and refocus.



Draw Your Observations Neatly with a Pencil

1) Draw what you see under the microscope using a pencil with a sharp point.
2) Make sure your drawing takes up at least half of the space available and that it is drawn with clear, unbroken lines.
3) Your drawing should not include any colouring or shading.
4) If you are drawing cells, the subcellular structures should be drawn in proportion.
5) Remember to include a title of what you were observing and write down the magnification that it was observed under.
6) Label the important features of your drawing (e.g. nucleus, chloroplasts), using straight, uncrossed lines.



You can work out the real size of a cell by counting the number of cells in 1 mm of the sample (see p.128). You can work out the magnification of your drawing using this formula: magnification = length of drawing of cell ÷ real length of cell. So here, magnification = 33 mm ÷ 0.3 mm = × 110.

A light microscope is better than a heavy one...

If you can use a microscope, you're halfway to ruling the world. That's what I like to think, anyway.

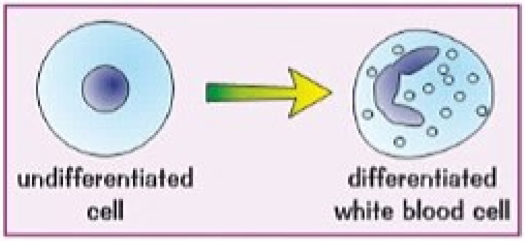
Q1 Why might you add stain to the sample on a microscope slide? [1 mark]

Cell Differentiation and Specialisation

Cells don't all look the same. They have different structures to suit their different functions.

Cells Differentiate to Become Specialised

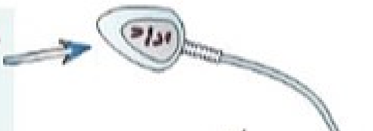
1) Differentiation is the process by which a cell changes to become specialised for its job.
2) As cells change, they develop different subcellular structures and turn into different types of cells. This allows them to carry out specific functions.
3) Most differentiation occurs as an organism develops. In most animal cells, the ability to differentiate is then lost at an early stage, after they become specialised. However, lots of plant cells don't ever lose this ability.
4) The cells that differentiate in mature animals are mainly used for repairing and replacing cells, such as skin or blood cells.
5) Some cells are undifferentiated cells — they're called stem cells. There's more about them on page 19.



You Need To Know These Examples of Specialised Cells

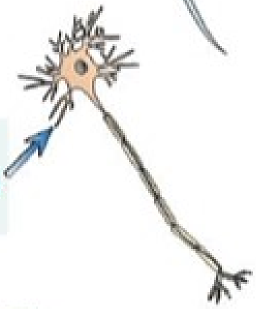
SPERM CELLS are specialised for REPRODUCTION

The function of a sperm is basically to get the male DNA to the female DNA. It has a long tail and a streamlined head to help it swim to the egg. There are a lot of mitochondria in the cell to provide the energy needed. It also carries enzymes in its head to digest through the egg cell membrane.



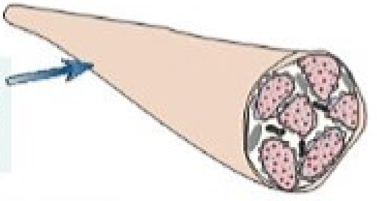
NERVE CELLS are specialised for RAPID SIGNALLING

The function of nerve cells is to carry electrical signals from one part of the body to another. These cells are long (to cover more distance) and have branched connections at their ends to connect to other nerve cells and form a network throughout the body.



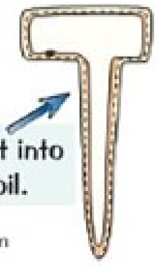
MUSCLE CELLS are specialised for CONTRACTION

The function of a muscle cell is to contract quickly. These cells are long (so that they have space to contract) and contain lots of mitochondria to generate the energy needed for contraction.



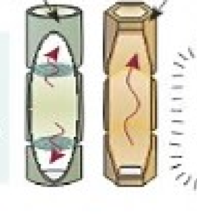
ROOT HAIR CELLS are specialised for absorbing WATER and MINERALS

Root hair cells are cells on the surface of plant roots, which grow into long "hairs" that stick out into the soil. This gives the plant a big surface area for absorbing water and mineral ions from the soil.



PHLOEM and XYLEM CELLS are specialised for TRANSPORTING SUBSTANCES

Phloem and xylem cells form phloem and xylem tubes, which transport substances such as food and water around plants. To form the tubes, the cells are long and joined end to end. Xylem cells are hollow in the centre and phloem cells have very few subcellular structures, so that stuff can flow through them.



There's more about phloem and xylem on page 43.

Tadpoles and tent pegs — cells are masters of disguise...

You need to know how the structure of each of the cells on this page relates to its function. Lucky you.

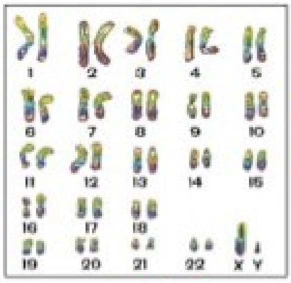
Q1 Plants transport food substances from the leaves to growing parts of the plant through phloem tubes. Give one feature of a phloem cell that makes it specialised for its function. [1 mark]

Q2 Describe how a root hair cell is specialised for its function. [2 marks]

Chromosomes and Mitosis

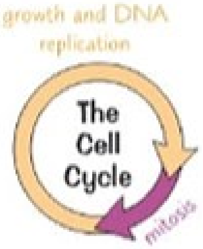
In order to survive and grow, our cells have got to be able to divide. And that means our DNA as well...

Chromosomes Contain Genetic Information

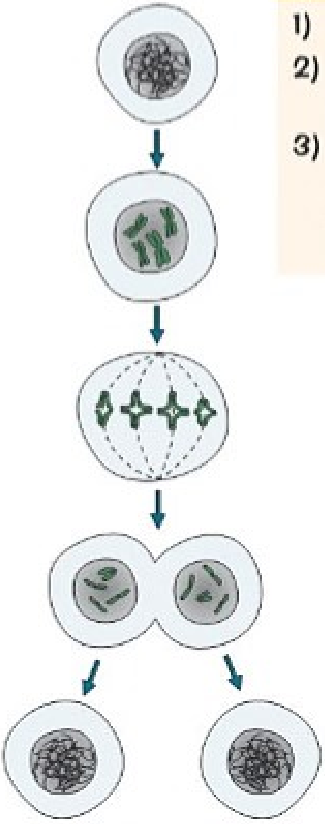


1) Most cells in your body have a nucleus. The nucleus contains your genetic material in the form of chromosomes.
2) Chromosomes are coiled up lengths of DNA molecules.
3) Each chromosome carries a large number of genes. Different genes control the development of different characteristics, e.g. hair colour.
4) Body cells normally have two copies of each chromosome — one from the organism's 'mother', and one from its 'father'. So, humans have two copies of chromosome 1, two copies of chromosome 2, etc.
5) The diagram shows the 23 pairs of chromosomes from a human cell.

The Cell Cycle Makes New Cells for Growth, Development and Repair



1) Body cells in multicellular organisms divide to produce new cells as part of a series of stages called the cell cycle.
2) The stage of the cell cycle when the cell divides is called mitosis.
3) Multicellular organisms use mitosis to grow or replace cells that have been damaged.
4) The end of the cell cycle results in two new cells identical to the original cell, with the same number of chromosomes.
5) You need to know about these two main stages of the cell cycle:



Growth & DNA Replication

1) In a cell that's not dividing, the DNA is all spread out in long strings.
2) Before it divides, the cell has to grow and increase the amount of subcellular structures such as mitochondria and ribosomes.
3) It then duplicates its DNA — so there's one copy for each new cell. The DNA is copied and forms X-shaped chromosomes. Each 'arm' of the chromosome is an exact duplicate of the other.

The left arm has the same DNA as the right arm of the chromosome.

Mitosis

Once its contents and DNA have been copied, the cell is ready for mitosis...

4) The chromosomes line up at the centre of the cell and cell fibres pull them apart. The two arms of each chromosome go to opposite ends of the cell.
5) Membranes form around each of the sets of chromosomes. These become the nuclei of the two new cells — the nucleus has divided.
6) Lastly, the cytoplasm and cell membrane divide.

The cell has now produced two new daughter cells. The daughter cells contain exactly the same DNA — they're identical. Their DNA is also identical to the parent cell.

A cell's favourite computer game — divide and conquer...

Mitosis can seem tricky at first. But don't worry — just go through it slowly, one step at a time. This type of division produces identical cells, but there's another type which doesn't... (see page 88).

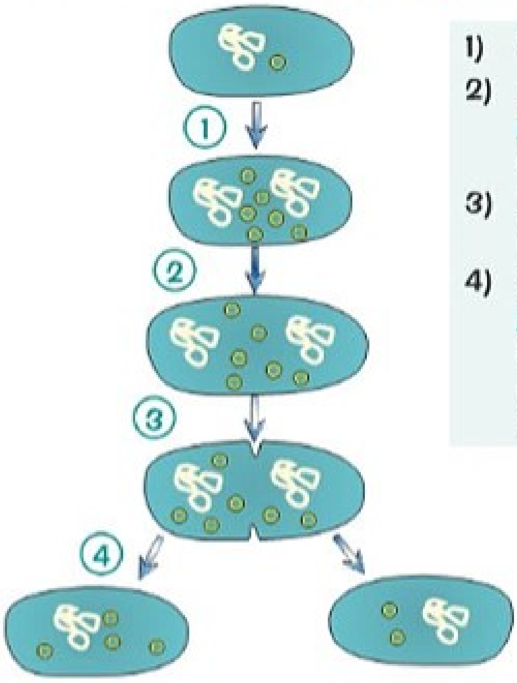
Q1 Describe the events of the cell cycle that need to occur before mitosis can begin. [2 marks]

Binary Fission

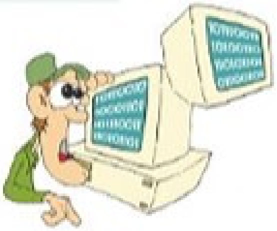
Prokaryotic cells can reproduce using a type of simple cell division called binary fission.

Prokaryotic Cells Replicate by Binary Fission

In binary fission, the cell... splits into two. There's a bit more to it than that though:



1) The circular DNA and plasmid(s) replicate.
2) The cell gets bigger and the circular DNA strands move to opposite 'poles' (ends) of the cell.
3) The cytoplasm begins to divide and new cell walls begin to form.
4) The cytoplasm divides and two daughter cells are produced. Each daughter cell has one copy of the circular DNA, but can have a variable number of copies of the plasmid(s).



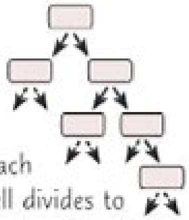
Bacteria can divide very quickly if given the right conditions (e.g. a warm environment and lots of nutrients). Some bacteria, such as *E. coli*, can take as little as 20 minutes to replicate in the right environment. However, if conditions become unfavourable, the cells will stop dividing and eventually begin to die.

Use the Mean Division Time to Find the Number of Bacteria in a Population

The mean division time is just the average amount of time it takes for one bacterial cell to divide into two. If you know the mean division time of a cell, you can work out how many times it has divided in a certain amount of time, and so the number of cells it has produced in that time.

EXAMPLE: A bacterial cell has a mean division time of 30 minutes. How many cells will it have produced after 2.5 hours?

1) Make sure both times are in the same units. 2.5 hours × 60 = 150 minutes.
2) Divide the total time that the bacteria are producing cells by the mean division time. This gives you the number of divisions. 150 minutes ÷ 30 minutes = 5 divisions
3) Multiply 2 by itself for the number of divisions to find the number of cells. $2^5 = 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 = 32$ cells



Each cell divides to produce 2 cells, so the number of cells increases by a power of 2 for each division.

Fission is division, there's no splitting hairs there...

Binary fission is the sort of subject where standard form could show up. Head back to page 12 if you're unsure.

Q1 Give two things that help to maximise the rate of binary fission. [2 marks]

Q2 A bacterial cell has a mean division time of 30 minutes. How many cells will it have produced in 3 hours? [2 marks]

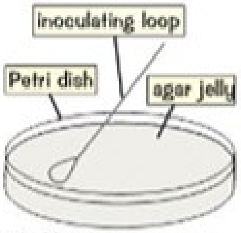
Culturing Microorganisms

PRACTICAL

And now for some hands-on stuff. You can grow your own microorganisms and test how effective different antibiotics, antiseptics or disinfectants are at killing them — just watch out for those bacterial rights activists...

You Can Grow Bacteria in the Lab

1) Bacteria (and some other microorganisms) are grown (cultured) in a "culture medium", which contains the carbohydrates, minerals, proteins and vitamins they need to grow.
2) The culture medium used can be a nutrient broth solution or solid agar jelly.
3) Bacteria grown on agar 'plates' will form visible colonies on the surface of the jelly, or will spread out to give an even covering of bacteria.
    - To make an agar plate, hot agar jelly is poured into shallow round plastic dishes called Petri dishes.
    - When the jelly's cooled and set, inoculating loops (wire loops) can be used to transfer microorganisms to the culture medium. Alternatively, a sterile dropping pipette and spreader can be used to get an even covering of bacteria.
    - The microorganisms then multiply.



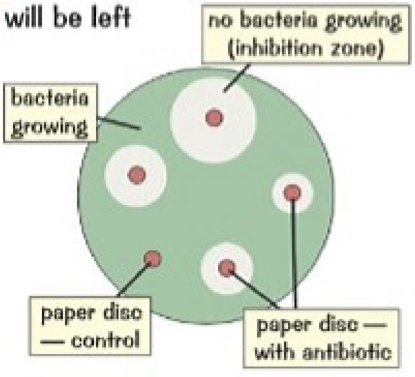
4) In the lab at school, cultures of microorganisms are not kept above 25 °C, because harmful pathogens are more likely to grow above this temperature.
5) In industrial conditions, cultures are incubated at higher temperatures so that they can grow a lot faster.

Pathogens are microorganisms that cause disease (see p.46).

You Can Investigate the Effect of Antibiotics on Bacterial Growth

You can test the action of antibiotics (or antiseptics) on cultures of bacteria:

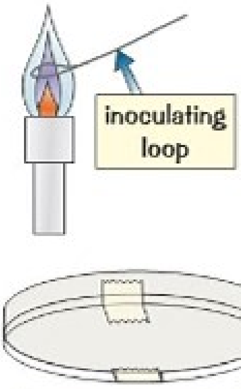
1) Place paper discs soaked in different types (or different concentrations) of antibiotics on an agar plate that has an even covering of bacteria. Leave some space between the discs.
2) The antibiotic should diffuse (soak) into the agar jelly. Antibiotic-resistant bacteria (i.e. bacteria that aren't affected by the antibiotic — see p.51) will continue to grow on the agar around the paper discs, but non-resistant strains will die. A clear area will be left where the bacteria have died — this is called an inhibition zone.
3) Make sure you use a control. This is a paper disc that has not been soaked in an antibiotic. Instead, soak it in sterile water. You can then be sure that any difference between the growth of the bacteria around the control disc and around one of the antibiotic discs is due to the effect of the antibiotic alone (and not something weird in the paper, for example).
4) Leave the plate for 48 hours at 25 °C.
5) The more effective the antibiotic is against the bacteria, the larger the inhibition zone will be — see next page.


no bacteria growing (inhibition zone)
bacteria growing
paper disc — control
paper disc — with antibiotic

You Need to Use Uncontaminated Cultures

Contamination by unwanted microorganisms will affect your results and can potentially result in the growth of pathogens. To avoid this:

1) The Petri dishes and culture medium must be sterilised before use (e.g. by heating to a high temperature), to kill any unwanted microorganisms that may be lurking on them.
2) If an inoculating loop is used to transfer the bacteria to the culture medium, it should be sterilised first by passing it through a hot flame.
3) After transferring the bacteria, the lid of the Petri dish should be lightly taped on — to stop microorganisms from the air getting in.
4) The Petri dish should be stored upside down — to stop drops of condensation falling onto the agar surface.



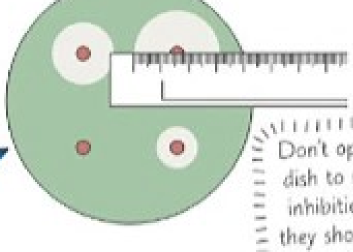
storing a Petri dish

PRACTICAL Culturing Microorganisms

Calculate the Sizes of the Inhibition Zones to Compare Results

You can compare the effectiveness of different antibiotics (or antiseptics) on bacteria by looking at the relative sizes of the inhibition zones. The larger the inhibition zone around a disc, the more effective the antibiotic is against the bacteria.

You can do this by eye if there are large differences in size. But to get more accurate results it's a good idea to calculate the area of the inhibition zones using their diameter (the distance across).



Don't open the Petri dish to measure the inhibition zones — they should be visible through the bottom of the dish.

To calculate the area of an inhibition zone, you need to use this equation:

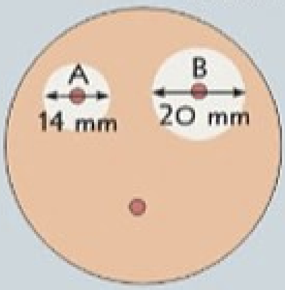
$$\text{Area} = \pi r^2$$

This is the equation for the area of a circle. You're likely to use the units cm^2 or mm^2.

r is the radius of the inhibition zone — it's equal to half the diameter.

π is just a number. You should have a button for it on your calculator. If not, just use the value 3.14.

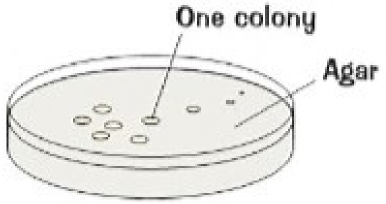
EXAMPLE: The diagram below shows the inhibition zones produced by antibiotics A and B. Use the areas of the inhibition zones to compare the effectiveness of the antibiotics.



1) Divide the diameter of zone A by two to find the radius. — Radius of A = 14 ÷ 2 = 7 mm
2) Stick the radius value into the equation area = πr^2. — Area of A = $\pi \times 7^2 = 154\ mm^2$
3) Repeat steps 1 and 2 for zone B. — Radius of B = 20 ÷ 2 = 10 mm; Area of B = $\pi \times 10^2 = 314\ mm^2$
4) Compare the sizes of the areas. $314\ mm^2$ is just over twice $154\ mm^2$, so you could say that: — The inhibition zone of antibiotic B is roughly twice the size of the inhibition zone of antibiotic A.

You Can Also Find the Area of a Colony

The equation above can also be used to calculate the area of a bacterial colony. You just need to measure the diameter of the colony you are interested in first.



Agar — my favourite jelly flavour after raspberry...

Microorganisms might be the perfect pets. You don't have to walk them, they won't get lonely and they hardly cost anything to feed. But whatever you do, do not feed them after midnight.

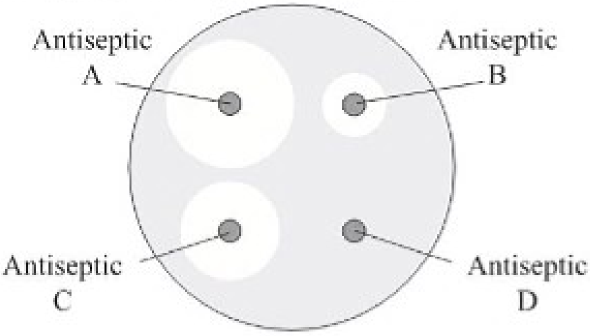
Q1 A researcher was investigating the effect of four different antiseptics on the growth of bacteria. The diagram on the right shows the results.

a) Which antiseptic was most effective against the bacteria? [1 mark]

b) Calculate the size of the inhibition zone for Antiseptic C. Give your answer in mm^2. [2 marks]

c) Describe a control that could have been used for this investigation. [1 mark]

d) Explain why a control should be used. [1 mark]



Stem Cells

Stem cell research has exciting possibilities, but it's also pretty controversial.

Embryonic Stem Cells Can Turn into ANY Type of Cell

1) Differentiation is the process by which a cell changes to become specialised for its job — see p.14.
2) Undifferentiated cells, called stem cells, can divide to produce lots more undifferentiated cells. They can differentiate into different types of cell, depending on what instructions they're given.
3) Stem cells are found in early human embryos. They're exciting to doctors and medical researchers because they have the potential to turn into any kind of cell at all. This makes sense if you think about it — all the different types of cell found in a human being have to come from those few cells in the early embryo.
4) Adults also have stem cells, but they're only found in certain places, like bone marrow. Unlike embryonic stem cells, they can't turn into any cell type at all, only certain ones, such as blood cells.
5) Stem cells from embryos and bone marrow can be grown in a lab to produce clones (genetically identical cells) and made to differentiate into specialised cells to use in medicine or research.

Stem Cells May Be Able to Cure Many Diseases

1) Medicine already uses adult stem cells to cure disease. For example, stem cells transferred from the bone marrow of a healthy person can replace faulty blood cells in the patient who receives them.
2) Embryonic stem cells could also be used to replace faulty cells in sick people — you could make insulin-producing cells for people with diabetes, nerve cells for people paralysed by spinal injuries, and so on.
3) In a type of cloning, called therapeutic cloning, an embryo could be made to have the same genetic information as the patient. This means that the stem cells produced from it would also contain the same genes and so wouldn't be rejected by the patient's body if used to replace faulty cells.
4) However, there are risks involved in using stem cells in medicine. For example, stem cells grown in the lab may become contaminated with a virus which could be passed on to the patient and so make them sicker.

Some People Are Against Stem Cell Research

1) Some people are against stem cell research because they feel that human embryos shouldn't be used for experiments since each one is a potential human life.
2) Others think that curing existing patients who are suffering is more important than the rights of embryos.
3) One fairly convincing argument in favour of this point of view is that the embryos used in the research are usually unwanted ones from fertility clinics which, if they weren't used for research, would probably just be destroyed. But of course, campaigners for the rights of embryos usually want this banned too.
4) These campaigners feel that scientists should concentrate more on finding and developing other sources of stem cells, so people could be helped without having to use embryos.
5) In some countries stem cell research is banned. It's allowed in the UK as long as it follows strict guidelines.

Stem Cells Can Produce Identical Plants

1) In plants, stem cells are found in the meristems (parts of the plant where growth occurs — see p.42).
2) Throughout the plant's entire life, cells in the meristem tissues can differentiate into any type of plant cell.
3) These stem cells can be used to produce clones (identical copies) of whole plants quickly and cheaply.
4) They can be used to grow more plants of rare species (to prevent them being wiped out).
5) Stem cells can also be used to grow crops of identical plants that have desired features for farmers, for example, disease resistance.

But florists cell stems, and nobody complains about that...

Whatever your opinion is, make sure know the uses of stem cells and the arguments for and against using them.

Q1 How can stem cells be used to preserve rare plant species? [2 marks]

Diffusion

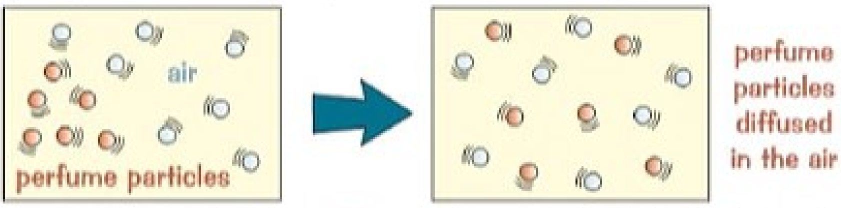
Particles move about randomly, and after a bit they end up evenly spaced. It's not rocket science, is it...

Don't Be Put Off by the Fancy Word

1) "Diffusion" is simple. It's just the gradual movement of particles from places where there are lots of them to places where there are fewer of them — it's just the natural tendency for stuff to spread out.
2) Unfortunately you also have to learn the fancy way of saying the same thing, which is this:

DIFFUSION is the SPREADING OUT of particles from an area of HIGHER CONCENTRATION to an area of LOWER CONCENTRATION.

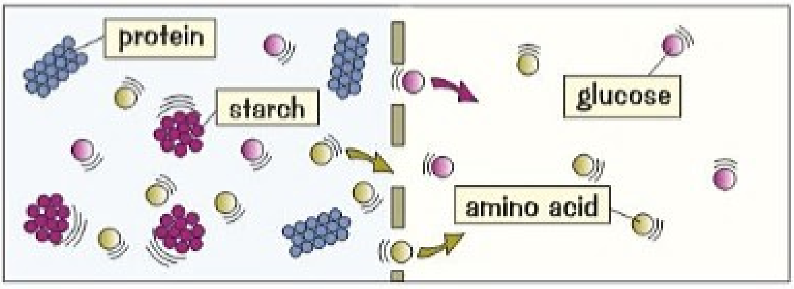
4) Diffusion happens in both solutions and gases — that's because the particles in these substances are free to move about randomly.
5) The simplest type is when different gases diffuse through each other. This is what's happening when the smell of perfume diffuses through the air in a room:



6) The bigger the concentration gradient (the difference in concentration), the faster the diffusion rate.
7) A higher temperature will also give a faster diffusion rate because the particles have more energy, so move around faster.

Cell Membranes Are Kind of Clever...

1) They're clever because they hold the cell together BUT they let stuff in and out as well.
2) Dissolved substances can move in and out of cells by diffusion.
3) Only very small molecules can diffuse through cell membranes though — things like oxygen (needed for respiration — see page 62), glucose, amino acids and water.
4) Big molecules like starch and proteins can't fit through the membrane:



5) Just like with diffusion in air, particles flow through the cell membrane from where there's a higher concentration (a lot of them) to where there's a lower concentration (not such a lot of them).
6) They're only moving about randomly of course, so they go both ways — but if there are a lot more particles on one side of the membrane, there's a net (overall) movement from that side.
7) The larger the surface area of the membrane, the faster the diffusion rate, because more particles can pass through at once — see page 23.

Revision by diffusion — you wish...

Wouldn't it be great if all the ideas in this book would just gradually drift across into your mind...

Q1 A student adds a drop of ink to a glass of cold water.

a) What will the student observe to happen to the drop of ink. Explain your answer. [2 marks]

b) How might the observation differ if the ink was added to a glass of warm water? [1 mark]

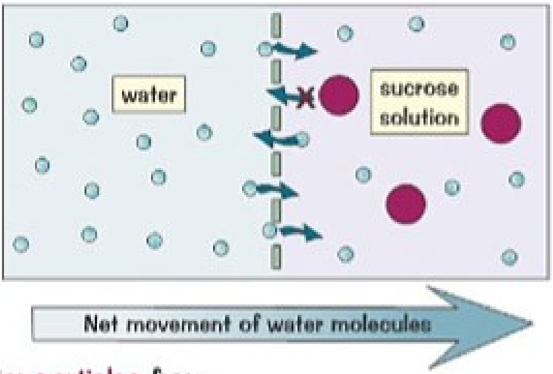
Osmosis

If you've got your head round diffusion, osmosis will be a breeze. If not, have another read of the previous page.

Osmosis is a Special Case of Diffusion, That's All

OSMOSIS is the movement of water molecules across a partially permeable membrane from a region of higher water concentration to a region of lower water concentration.

1) A partially permeable membrane is just one with very small holes in it. So small, in fact, only tiny molecules (like water) can pass through them, and bigger molecules (e.g. sucrose) can't.
2) The water molecules actually pass both ways through the membrane during osmosis. This happens because water molecules move about randomly all the time.
3) But because there are more water molecules on one side than on the other, there's a steady net flow of water into the region with fewer water molecules, i.e. into the stronger sugar solution.
4) This means the strong sugar solution gets more dilute. The water acts like it's trying to "even up" the concentration either side of the membrane.
5) Osmosis is a type of diffusion — passive movement of water particles from an area of higher water concentration to an area of lower water concentration.

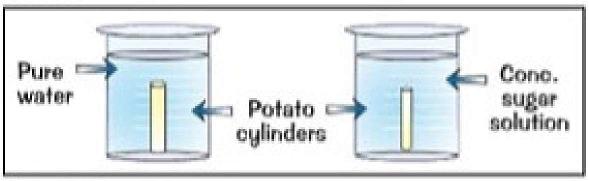


You can Observe the Effect of Sugar Solutions on Plant Tissue

PRACTICAL

There's a fairly dull experiment you can do to show osmosis at work.

1) You cut up an innocent potato into identical cylinders, and get some beakers with different sugar solutions in them. One should be pure water and another should be a very concentrated sugar solution (e.g. 1 mol/dm^3). Then you can have a few others with concentrations in between (e.g. 0.2 mol/dm^3, 0.4 mol/dm^3, 0.6 mol/dm^3, etc.)
2) You measure the mass of the cylinders, then leave one cylinder in each beaker for twenty four hours or so.
3) Then you take them out, dry them with a paper towel and measure their masses again.
4) If the cylinders have drawn in water by osmosis, they'll have increased in mass. If water has been drawn out, they'll have decreased in mass. You can calculate the percentage change in mass, then plot a few graphs and things.
5) The dependent variable is the chip mass and the independent variable is the concentration of the sugar solution. All other variables (volume of solution, temperature, time, type of sugar used, etc. etc.) must be kept the same in each case or the experiment won't be a fair test.
6) Like any experiment, you need to be aware of how errors (see p.5) may arise. Sometimes they may occur when carrying out the method, e.g. if some potato cylinders were not fully dried, the excess water would give a higher mass, or if water evaporated from the beakers, the concentrations of the sugar solutions would change. You can reduce the effect of these errors by repeating the experiment and calculating a mean percentage change at each concentration.



By calculating the percentage change (see p.130), you can compare the effect of sugar concentration on cylinders that didn't have the same initial mass. An increase in mass will give a positive percentage change and a decrease will give a negative percentage change.

You could also carry out this experiment using different salt solutions and see what effect they have on potato chip mass.

And to all you cold-hearted potato murderers...

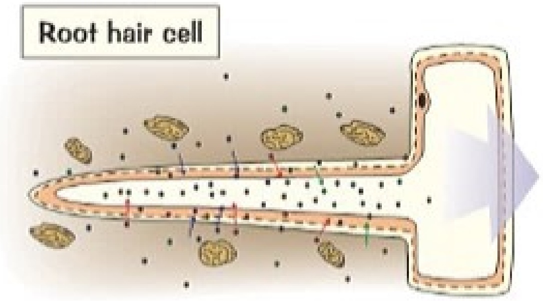
Just remember, osmosis is really just a fancy word for the diffusion of water molecules. It's simple really.

Q1 Explain what will happen to the mass of a piece of potato added to a concentrated salt solution. [2 marks]

Active Transport

Sometimes substances need to be absorbed against a concentration gradient, i.e. from a lower to a higher concentration. This process is lovingly referred to as ACTIVE TRANSPORT.

Root Hairs Take In *Minerals* and *Water*



1) As you saw on page 14, the cells on plant roots grow into "hairs" which stick out into the soil.
2) Each branch of a root will be covered in millions of these microscopic hairs.
3) This gives the plant a large surface area for absorbing water and mineral ions from the soil.
4) Plants need these mineral ions for healthy growth.
5) The concentration of minerals is usually higher in the root hair cells than in the soil around them.
6) So the root hair cells can't use diffusion to take up minerals from the soil.

Root Hairs Take in Minerals Using *Active Transport*

Water is taken into root hair cells by osmosis (see page 21).

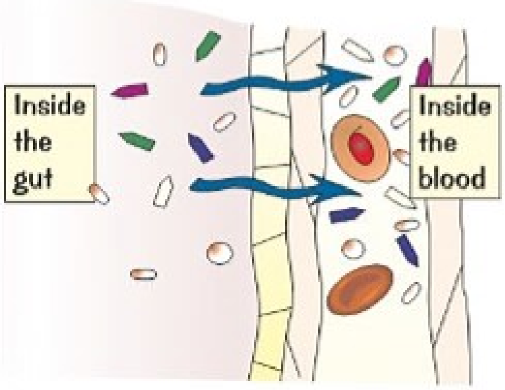
1) Minerals should move out of the root hairs if they followed the rules of diffusion. The cells must use another method to draw them in.
2) That method is, in fact, a conveniently mysterious process called "active transport".
3) Active transport allows the plant to absorb minerals from a very dilute solution, against a concentration gradient. This is essential for its growth. But active transport needs ENERGY from respiration to make it work.
4) Active transport also happens in humans, for example in taking glucose from the gut (see below), and from the kidney tubules.

We Need *Active Transport* to Stop Us Starving

Active transport is used in the gut when there is a lower concentration of nutrients in the gut, but a higher concentration of nutrients in the blood.

1) When there's a higher concentration of glucose and amino acids in the gut they diffuse naturally into the blood.
2) BUT — sometimes there's a lower concentration of nutrients in the gut than there is in the blood.
3) This means that the concentration gradient is the wrong way.
4) The same process used in plant roots is used here...

   ..."Active transport".
5) Active transport allows nutrients to be taken into the blood, despite the fact that the concentration gradient is the wrong way.
6) This means that glucose can be taken into the bloodstream when its concentration in the blood is already higher than in the gut. It can then be transported to cells, where it's used for respiration (see p.61).



Active transport — get on yer bike...

An important difference between active transport and diffusion is that active transport uses energy. Imagine a pen of sheep in a field. If you open the pen, the sheep will happily diffuse from the area of higher sheep concentration into the field, which has a lower sheep concentration — you won't have to do a thing. To get them back in the pen though, you'll have to put in quite a bit of energy.

Q1 What is the purpose of active transport in the gut? [1 mark]

Exchange Surfaces

How easily stuff moves between an organism and its environment depends on its surface area to volume ratio.

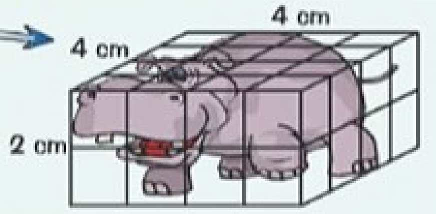
Organisms Exchange Substances with their Environment

1) Cells can use diffusion to take in substances they need and get rid of waste products. For example:
   - Oxygen and carbon dioxide are transferred between cells and the environment during gas exchange.
   - In humans, urea (a waste product produced from the breakdown of proteins, see p.75) diffuses from cells into the blood plasma for removal from the body by the kidneys.
2) How easy it is for an organism to exchange substances with its environment depends on the organism's surface area to volume ratio (SA : V).

You Can Compare Surface Area to Volume Ratios

A ratio shows how big one value is compared to another. The larger an organism is, the smaller its surface area is compared to its volume. You can show this by calculating surface area to volume ratios:

A hippo can be represented by a 2 cm × 4 cm × 4 cm block.



The area of a surface is found by the equation: LENGTH × WIDTH

So the hippo's total surface area is:

$(4 \times 4) \times 2$ (top and bottom surfaces of block)
$+ (4 \times 2) \times 4$ (four sides of the block)
$= 64$ cm^2.

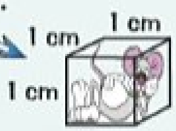
The volume of a block is found by the equation: LENGTH × WIDTH × HEIGHT

So the hippo's volume is $4 \times 4 \times 2 = 32$ cm^3.

The surface area to volume ratio of the hippo can be written as 64 : 32.
To simplify the ratio, divide both sides of the ratio by the volume.
So the surface area to volume ratio of the hippo is 2 : 1.

A mouse can be represented by a 1 cm × 1 cm × 1 cm block.

Its surface area is $(1 \times 1) \times 6 = 6$ cm^2.
Its volume is $1 \times 1 \times 1 = 1$ cm^3.
So the surface area to volume ratio of the mouse is 6 : 1.



The cube mouse's surface area is six times its volume, but the cube hippo's surface area is only twice its volume. So the mouse has a larger surface area compared to its volume.

Multicellular Organisms Need Exchange Surfaces

1) In single-celled organisms, gases and dissolved substances can diffuse directly into (or out of) the cell across the cell membrane. It's because they have a large surface area compared to their volume, so enough substances can be exchanged across the membrane to supply the volume of the cell.
2) Multicellular organisms have a smaller surface area compared to their volume — not enough substances can diffuse from their outside surface to supply their entire volume. This means they need some sort of exchange surface for efficient diffusion (see pages 24-25 for some examples). The exchange surface structures have to allow enough of the necessary substances to pass through.
3) Exchange surfaces are ADAPTED to maximise effectiveness:
   - They have a thin membrane, so substances only have a short distance to diffuse.
   - They have a large surface area so lots of a substance can diffuse at once.
   - Exchange surfaces in animals have lots of blood vessels, to get stuff into and out of the blood quickly.
   - Gas exchange surfaces in animals (e.g. alveoli) are often ventilated too — air moves in and out.

Not that I'm endorsing putting animals in boxes...

A large surface area is a key way that organisms' exchange surfaces are made more effective.

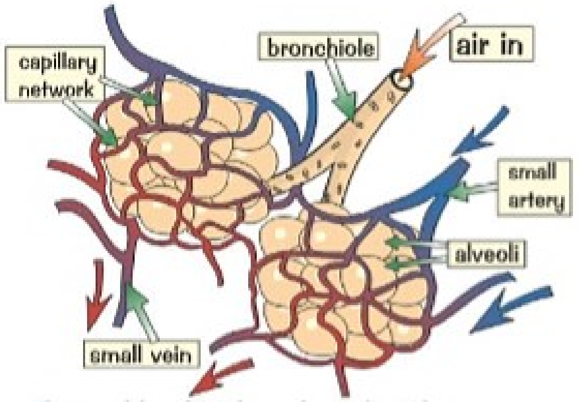
Q1 A bacterial cell can be represented by a 2 μm × 2 μm × 1 μm block. Calculate the cell's surface area to volume ratio. [3 marks]

Exchanging Substances

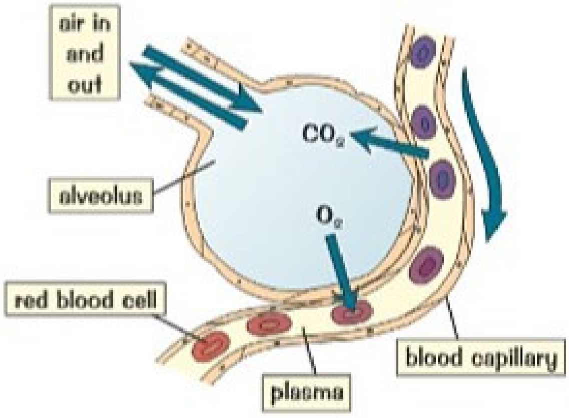
This page is about how two different parts of the human body are adapted so that substances can diffuse through them most effectively. The first bit is about how gases in the lungs get into and out of the blood. The second is about how digested food gets from the gut to the blood.

Gas Exchange Happens in the Lungs

1) The job of the lungs is to transfer oxygen to the blood and to remove waste carbon dioxide from it.
2) To do this the lungs contain millions of little air sacs called alveoli where gas exchange takes place.


capillary network
bronchiole
air in
small artery
alveoli
small vein

Blue = blood with carbon dioxide.
Red = blood with oxygen.

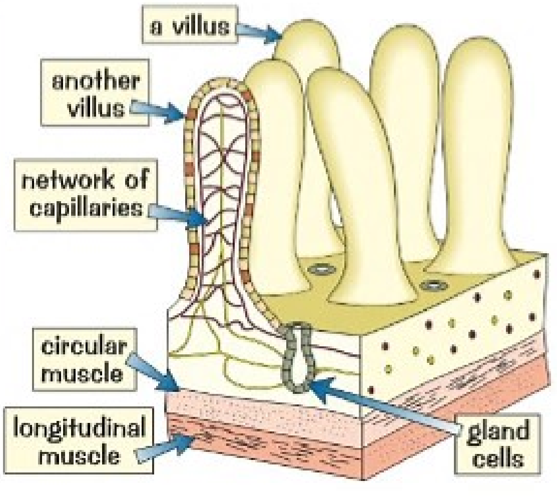

air in and out
CO_2
O_2
alveolus
red blood cell
blood capillary
plasma

3) The alveoli are specialised to maximise the diffusion of O_2 and CO_2. They have:
   - An enormous surface area (about 75 m^2 in humans).
   - A moist lining for dissolving gases.
   - Very thin walls.
   - A good blood supply.

The Villi Provide a Really Really Big Surface Area

1) The inside of the small intestine is covered in millions and millions of these tiny little projections called villi.
2) They increase the surface area in a big way so that digested food is absorbed much more quickly into the blood.
3) Notice they have:
   - a single layer of surface cells,
   - a very good blood supply to assist quick absorption.

The digested food moves into the blood by diffusion and by active transport (see page 22).


a villus
another villus
network of capillaries
circular muscle
longitudinal muscle
gland cells

Al Veoli — the Italian gas man...

Thankfully, our bodies are well adapted for efficient diffusion of substances. But the array of life's snazzy exchange surfaces doesn't stop here, oh no — just take a look at what's coming up on the next page...

Q1 Give one way in which alveoli are adapted for gas exchange. [1 mark]

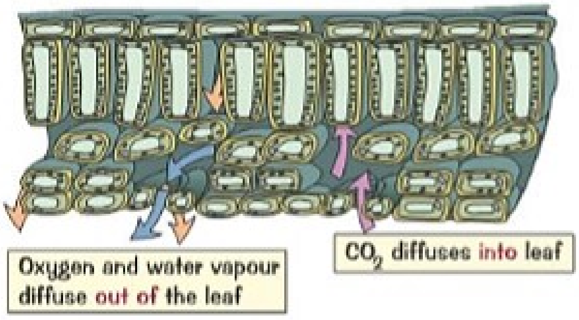
Q2 Describe how the surface area of the small intestine is maximised for absorption. [1 mark]

More on Exchanging Substances

More stuff on adaptations for diffusion now — only this time, it's plants and fish. Whoopee...

The Structure of Leaves Lets Gases Diffuse In and Out of Cells

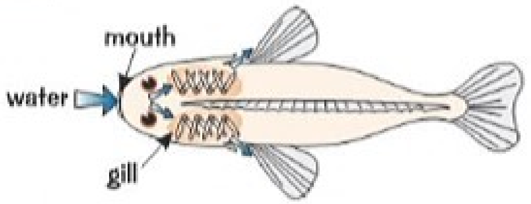
1) Carbon dioxide diffuses into the air spaces within the leaf, then it diffuses into the cells where photosynthesis happens. The leaf's structure is adapted so that this can happen easily.
2) The underneath of the leaf is an exchange surface. It's covered in biddy little holes called stomata which the carbon dioxide diffuses in through.
3) Oxygen (produced in photosynthesis) and water vapour also diffuse out through the stomata. (Water vapour is actually lost from all over the leaf surface, but most of it is lost through the stomata.)
4) The size of the stomata are controlled by guard cells — see page 44. These close the stomata if the plant is losing water faster than it is being replaced by the roots. Without these guard cells the plant would soon wilt.
5) The flattened shape of the leaf increases the area of this exchange surface so that it's more effective.
6) The walls of the cells inside the leaf form another exchange surface. The air spaces inside the leaf increase the area of this surface so there's more chance for carbon dioxide to get into the cells.

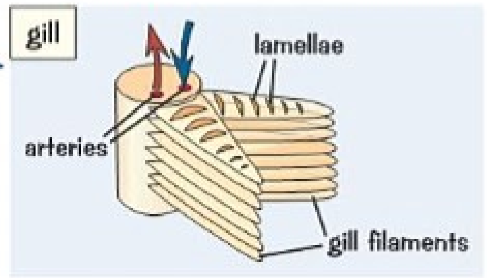

Oxygen and water vapour diffuse out of the leaf
CO_2 diffuses into leaf

The water vapour evaporates from the cells inside the leaf. Then it escapes by diffusion because there's a lot of it inside the leaf and less of it in the air outside.

Gills Have a Large Surface Area for Gas Exchange

1) The gills are the gas exchange surface in fish.
2) Water (containing oxygen) enters the fish through its mouth and passes out through the gills. As this happens, oxygen diffuses from the water into the blood in the gills and carbon dioxide diffuses from the blood into the water.
3) Each gill is made of lots of thin plates called gill filaments, which give a big surface area for exchange of gases.
4) The gill filaments are covered in lots of tiny structures called lamellae, which increase the surface area even more.
5) The lamellae have lots of blood capillaries to speed up diffusion.
6) They also have a thin surface layer of cells to minimise the distance that the gases have to diffuse.
7) Blood flows through the lamellae in one direction and water flows over in the opposite direction. This maintains a large concentration gradient between the water and the blood.
8) The concentration of oxygen in the water is always higher than that in the blood, so as much oxygen as possible diffuses from the water into the blood.





In, out, in, out, shake that oxygen about...

There's a theme here — multicellular organisms are really well adapted for getting the substances they need to their cells. It makes sense — if they couldn't do this well, they'd die out. If you're asked in an exam how something's adapted for exchange, think about whether surface area is important — cos it often is.

Q1 Give two ways in which the structure of a gill is adapted for effective gas exchange. [2 marks]

Revision Questions for Topic 1

Well, that's Topic 1 done and dusted. Now there's only one way to find out whether you've learnt anything from it. And you know what that is, I'll bet. It's obvious... I mean, there's a whole load of questions staring you in the face — chances are, it's got to involve those in some way. And sure enough, it does.

- Try these questions and tick off each one when you get it right.
- When you've done all the questions under a heading and are completely happy with it, tick it off.

Cells and Microscopy (p.11-13) ☐

1) Name five subcellular structures that both plant and animal cells have. ☐

2) What three things do plant cells have that animal cells don't? ☐

3) Where is the genetic material found in:
   a) animal cells,
   b) bacterial cells? ☐

4) What type of organisms are bacteria — prokaryotes or eukaryotes? ☐

5) Which gives a higher resolution — a light microscope or an electron microscope? ☐

Differentiation and Division (p.14-16) ☐

6) What is cell differentiation? ☐

7) Give three ways that a sperm cell is adapted for swimming to an egg cell. ☐

8) Draw a diagram of a nerve cell. Why is it this shape? ☐

9) What are chromosomes? ☐

10) What is the cell cycle? ☐

11) What is mitosis used for by multicellular organisms? ☐

12) What is the name of the process by which bacteria divide? ☐

Culturing Microorganisms (p.17-18) ☐

13) a) What is the maximum temperature that microorganisms should be grown at in a school lab?
   b) Why shouldn't a temperature above this be used? ☐

14) There are ways in which you can make sure an experiment testing the effect of antibiotics on bacteria has not been contaminated. Give three of these ways. ☐

Stem Cells (p.19) ☐

15) Give two ways that embryonic stem cells could be used to cure diseases. ☐

16) Why might some people be opposed to the use of human embryos in stem cell research? ☐

Exchanging Substances (p.20-25) ☐

17) What is diffusion? ☐

18) Name three substances that can diffuse through cell membranes, and two that can't. ☐

19) What type of molecules move by osmosis? ☐

20) Give the two main differences between active transport and diffusion. ☐

21) Give three adaptations of exchange surfaces that increase the efficiency of diffusion. ☐

22) Give two ways that the villi in the small intestine are adapted for absorbing digested food. ☐

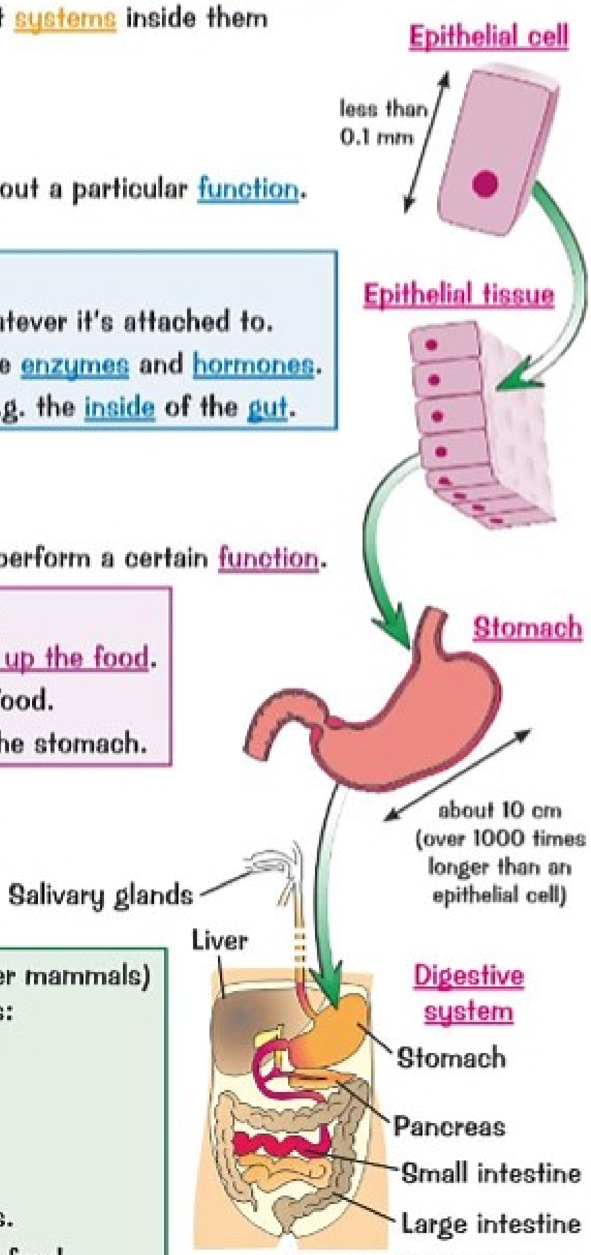
23) Explain how leaves are adapted to maximise the amount of carbon dioxide that gets to their cells. ☐

Cell Organisation

Some organisms contain loads of cells, but how, you might wonder, do all these cells end up making a working human or squirrel... the answer's organisation. Without it, they'd just make a meaty splodge.

Large Multicellular Organisms are Made Up of Organ Systems

1) Cells are the basic building blocks that make up all living organisms.
2) As you know from page 14, specialised cells carry out a particular function.
3) The process by which cells become specialised for a particular job is called differentiation. Differentiation occurs during the development of a multicellular organism.
4) These specialised cells form tissues, which form organs, which form organ systems (see below).
5) Large multicellular organisms (e.g. squirrels) have different systems inside them for exchanging and transporting materials.



You need to know where these organs are on a diagram — see page 31 too.

Similar Cells are Organised into Tissues

A tissue is a group of similar cells that work together to carry out a particular function. It can include more than one type of cell.

In mammals (like humans), examples of tissues include:
1) Muscular tissue, which contracts (shortens) to move whatever it's attached to.
2) Glandular tissue, which makes and secretes chemicals like enzymes and hormones.
3) Epithelial tissue, which covers some parts of the body, e.g. the inside of the gut.

Tissues are Organised into Organs

An organ is a group of different tissues that work together to perform a certain function.

For example, the stomach is an organ made of these tissues:
1) Muscular tissue, which moves the stomach wall to churn up the food.
2) Glandular tissue, which makes digestive juices to digest food.
3) Epithelial tissue, which covers the outside and inside of the stomach.

Organs are Organised into Organ Systems

An organ system is a group of organs working together to perform a particular function.

For example, the digestive system (found in humans and other mammals) breaks down and absorbs food. It's made up of these organs:
1) Glands (e.g. the pancreas and salivary glands), which produce digestive juices.
2) The stomach and small intestine, which digest food.
3) The liver, which produces bile.
4) The small intestine, which absorbs soluble food molecules.
5) The large intestine, which absorbs water from undigested food, leaving faeces.

Organ systems work together to make entire organisms.

Soft and quilted — the best kind of tissues...

So in summary, an organism consists of organ systems, which are groups of organs, which are made of tissues, which are groups of cells working together. Now just for the thrill of it, here's a practice question.

Q1 The bladder is an organ. Explain what this means. [2 marks]

Enzymes

Chemical reactions are what make you work. And enzymes are what make them work.

Enzymes Are Catalysts Produced by Living Things

1) Living things have thousands of different chemical reactions going on inside them all the time. These reactions need to be carefully controlled — to get the right amounts of substances.
2) You can usually make a reaction happen more quickly by raising the temperature. This would speed up the useful reactions but also the unwanted ones too... not good. There's also a limit to how far you can raise the temperature inside a living creature before its cells start getting damaged.
3) So... living things produce enzymes that act as biological catalysts. Enzymes reduce the need for high temperatures and we only have enzymes to speed up the useful chemical reactions in the body.

> A CATALYST is a substance which INCREASES the speed of a reaction, without being CHANGED or USED UP in the reaction.

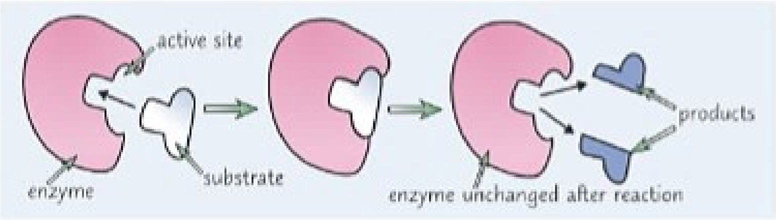
4) Enzymes are all large proteins and all proteins are made up of chains of amino acids. These chains are folded into unique shapes, which enzymes need to do their jobs (see below).

Enzymes Have Special Shapes So They Can Catalyse Reactions

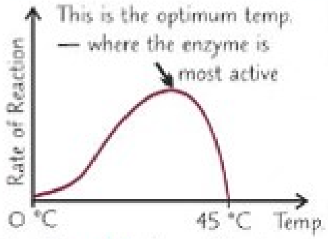
1) Chemical reactions usually involve things either being split apart or joined together.
2) Every enzyme has an active site with a unique shape that fits onto the substance involved in a reaction.
3) Enzymes are really picky — they usually only catalyse one specific reaction.
4) This is because, for the enzyme to work, the substrate has to fit into its active site. If the substrate doesn't match the enzyme's active site, then the reaction won't be catalysed.

The substance that an enzyme acts on is called the substrate.

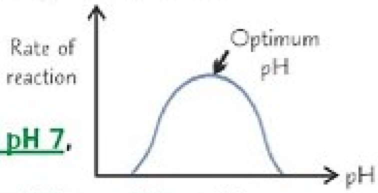
5) This diagram shows the 'lock and key' model of enzyme action. This is simpler than how enzymes actually work. In reality, the active site changes shape a little as the substrate binds to it to get a tighter fit. This is called the 'induced fit' model of enzyme action.



Enzymes Need the Right Temperature and pH



1) Changing the temperature changes the rate of an enzyme-catalysed reaction.
2) Like with any reaction, a higher temperature increases the rate at first. But if it gets too hot, some of the bonds holding the enzyme together break. This changes the shape of the enzyme's active site, so the substrate won't fit any more. The enzyme is said to be denatured.
3) All enzymes have an optimum temperature that they work best at.
4) The pH also affects enzymes. If it's too high or too low, the pH interferes with the bonds holding the enzyme together. This changes the shape of the active site and denatures the enzyme.
5) All enzymes have an optimum pH that they work best at. It's often neutral pH 7, but not always — e.g. pepsin is an enzyme used to break down proteins in the stomach. It works best at pH 2, which means it's well-suited to the acidic conditions there.



If only enzymes could speed up revision...

Make sure you use the special terms like 'active site' and 'denatured' — the examiners will love it.

Q1 Explain why enzymes have an optimum pH. [2 marks]

Investigating Enzymatic Reactions

You'll soon know how to investigate the effect of pH on the rate of enzyme activity... I bet you're thrilled.

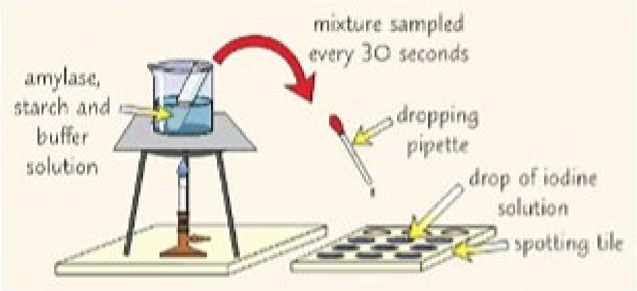
You Can Investigate the Effect of pH on Enzyme Activity

PRACTICAL

The enzyme amylase catalyses the breakdown of starch to maltose. It's easy to detect starch using iodine solution — if starch is present, the iodine solution will change from browny-orange to blue-black. This is how you can investigate how pH affects amylase activity:

You could use an electric water bath, instead of a Bunsen and a beaker of water, to control the temperature.

1) Put a drop of iodine solution into every well of a spotting tile.
2) Place a Bunsen burner on a heat-proof mat, and a tripod and gauze over the Bunsen burner. Put a beaker of water on top of the tripod and heat the water until it is 35 °C (use a thermometer to measure the temperature). Try to keep the temperature of the water constant throughout the experiment.
3) Use a syringe to add 1 cm^3 of amylase solution and 1 cm^3 of a buffer solution with a pH of 5 to a boiling tube. Using test tube holders, put the tube into the beaker of water and wait for five minutes.
4) Next, use a different syringe to add 5 cm^3 of a starch solution to the boiling tube.


mixture sampled every 30 seconds
amylase, starch and buffer solution
dropping pipette
drop of iodine solution
spotting tile

5) Immediately mix the contents of the boiling tube and start a stop clock.
6) Use continuous sampling to record how long it takes for the amylase to break down all of the starch. To do this, use a dropping pipette to take a fresh sample from the boiling tube every 30 seconds and put a drop into a well. When the iodine solution remains browny-orange, starch is no longer present.
7) Repeat the whole experiment with buffer solutions of different pH values to see how pH affects the time taken for the starch to be broken down.
8) Remember to control any variables each time (e.g. concentration and volume of amylase solution) to make it a fair test.

You could use a pH meter to accurately measure the pH of your solutions.

Here's How to Calculate the Rate of Reaction

1) It's often useful to calculate the rate of reaction after an experiment. Rate is a measure of how much something changes over time.
2) For the experiment above, you can calculate the rate of reaction using this formula:

$$\text{Rate} = \frac{1000}{\text{time}}$$

E.g.

> At pH 6, the time taken for amylase to break down all of the starch in a solution was 90 seconds. So the rate of the reaction = $1000 \div 90 = 11\ \text{s}^{-1}$ (2 s.f.)

The units are in s^{-1} since rate is given per unit time.

3) If an experiment measures how much something changes over time, you calculate the rate of reaction by dividing the amount that it has changed by the time taken.

EXAMPLE: The enzyme catalase catalyses the breakdown of hydrogen peroxide into water and oxygen. During an investigation into the activity of catalase, 24 cm^3 of oxygen was released in 50 seconds (s). Calculate the rate of the reaction. Write your answer in cm^3/s.

Amount of product formed = change = 24 cm^3

Rate of reaction = change ÷ time = $24\ \text{cm}^3 \div 50\ \text{s} = 0.48\ \text{cm}^3/\text{s}$

Mad scientists — they're experi-mental...

You could easily adapt this experiment to investigate how factors other than pH affect the rate of amylase activity. For example, you could use a water bath set to different temperatures to investigate the effect of temperature.

Q1 An enzyme-controlled reaction was carried out at pH 4. After 60 seconds, 33 cm^3 of product had been released. Calculate the rate of reaction in cm^3/s. [1 mark]

Enzymes and Digestion

The enzymes used in digestion are produced by cells and then released into the gut to mix with food.

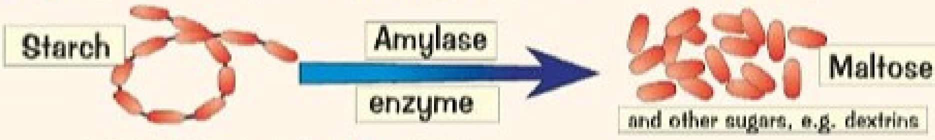
Digestive Enzymes Break Down Big Molecules

1) Starch, proteins and fats are BIG molecules. They're too big to pass through the walls of the digestive system, so digestive enzymes break these BIG molecules down into smaller ones like sugars (e.g. glucose and maltose), amino acids, glycerol and fatty acids. These smaller, soluble molecules can pass easily through the walls of the digestive system, allowing them to be absorbed into the bloodstream.

Carbohydrases Convert Carbohydrates into Simple Sugars

Amylase is an example of a carbohydrase. It breaks down starch.

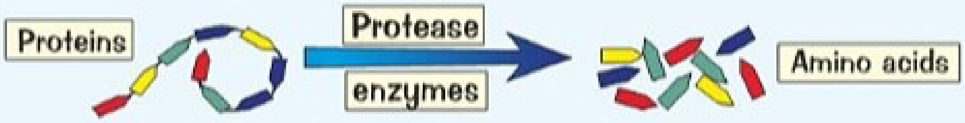
Starch is a carbohydrate.



Amylase is made in three places:

1) The salivary glands
2) The pancreas
3) The small intestine

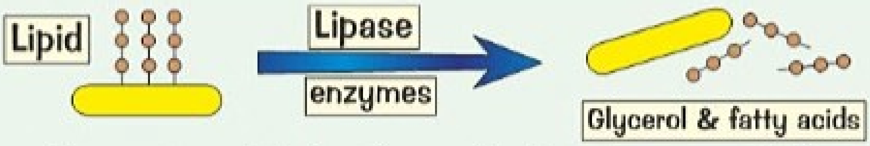
Proteases Convert Proteins into Amino Acids



Proteases are made in three places:

1) The stomach (it's called pepsin there)
2) The pancreas
3) The small intestine

Lipases Convert Lipids into Glycerol and Fatty Acids



Remember, lipids are fats and oils.

Lipases are made in two places:

1) The pancreas
2) The small intestine

2) The body makes good use of the products of digestion. They can be used to make new carbohydrates, proteins and lipids. Some of the glucose (a carbohydrate) that's made is used in respiration (see p.61).

Bile Neutralises the Stomach Acid and Emulsifies Fats

1) Bile is produced in the liver. It's stored in the gall bladder before it's released into the small intestine.
2) The hydrochloric acid in the stomach makes the pH too acidic for enzymes in the small intestine to work properly. Bile is alkaline — it neutralises the acid and makes conditions alkaline. The enzymes in the small intestine work best in these alkaline conditions.
3) It emulsifies fats. In other words it breaks the fat into tiny droplets. This gives a much bigger surface area of fat for the enzyme lipase to work on — which makes its digestion faster.

What do you call an acid that's eaten all the pies...

Make sure you know the examples of amylase, protease and lipase, and the reactions that they catalyse.

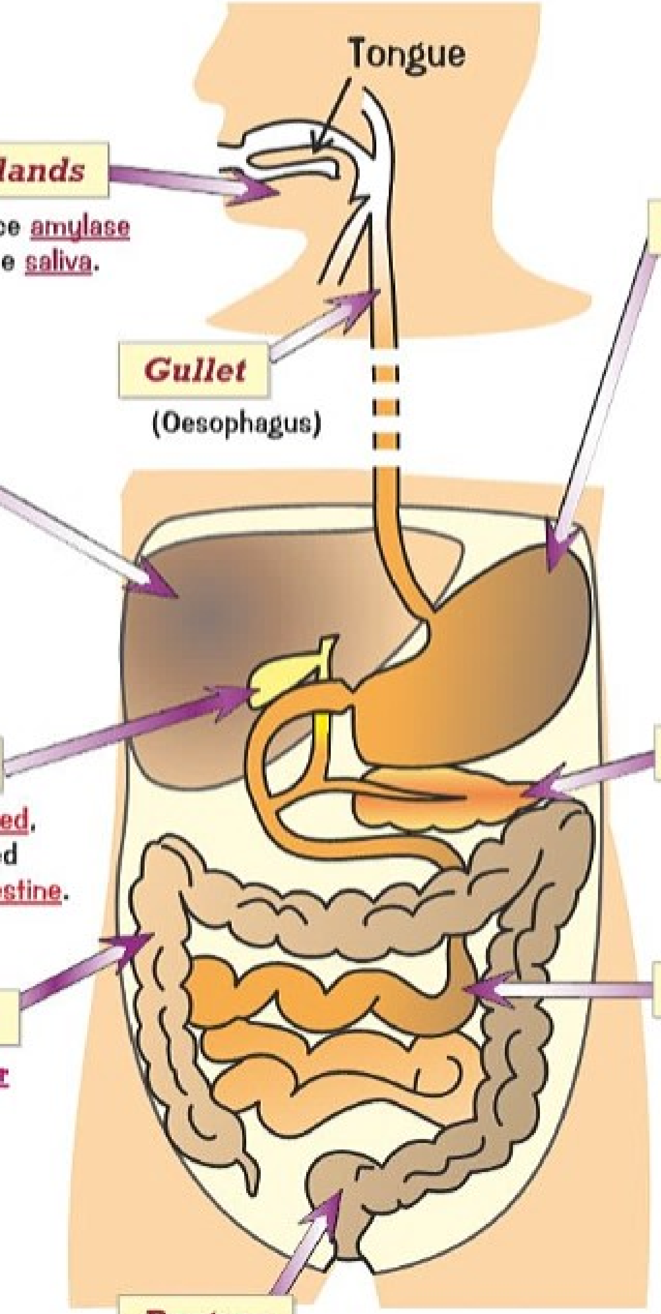
Q1 Bile is a product of the liver. Describe and explain its role in digestion. [4 marks]

More on Enzymes and Digestion

So now you know what the enzymes do, here's a nice big picture of the whole of the digestive system.

The Breakdown of Food is Catalysed by Enzymes

1) Enzymes used in the digestive system are produced by specialised cells in glands and in the gut lining.
2) Different enzymes catalyse the breakdown of different food molecules.



Salivary glands

These produce amylase enzyme in the saliva.

Stomach

1) It pummels the food with its muscular walls.
2) It produces the protease enzyme, pepsin.
3) It produces hydrochloric acid for two reasons:
    a) To kill bacteria
    b) To give the right pH for the protease enzyme to work (pH 2 — acidic).

Gullet

(Oesophagus)

Liver

Where bile is produced. Bile neutralises stomach acid and emulsifies fats.

Gall bladder

Where bile is stored, before it's released into the small intestine.

Pancreas

Produces protease, amylase and lipase enzymes. It releases these into the small intestine.

Large intestine

Where excess water is absorbed from the food.

Small intestine

1) Produces protease, amylase and lipase enzymes to complete digestion.
2) This is also where the digested food is absorbed out of the digestive system into the blood.

Rectum

Where the faeces (made up mainly of indigestible food) are stored before they bid you a fond farewell through the anus.

Mmmm — so who's for a chocolate digestive...

Did you know that the whole of your digestive system is actually a hole that goes right through your body. Think about it. It just gets loads of food, digestive juices and enzymes piled into it. Most of it's then absorbed into the body and the rest is politely stored for removal.

Q1 Name the three parts of the digestive system that produce protease enzymes. [3 marks]

PRACTICAL

Food Tests

There are some clever ways to identify what type of food molecule a sample contains. For each of the tests, you need to prepare a food sample. It's the same each time though — here's what you'd do:

1) Get a piece of food and break it up using a pestle and mortar.
2) Transfer the ground up food to a beaker and add some distilled water.
3) Give the mixture a good stir with a glass rod to dissolve some of the food.
4) Filter the solution using a funnel lined with filter paper to get rid of the solid bits of food.

Use the Benedict's Test to Test for Sugars

Sugars are found in all sorts of foods such as biscuits, cereal and bread. There are two types of sugars — non-reducing and reducing. You can test for reducing sugars in foods using the Benedict's test:

1) Prepare a food sample and transfer 5 cm^3 to a test tube.
2) Prepare a water bath so that it's set to 75 °C.
3) Add some Benedict's solution to the test tube (about 10 drops) using a pipette.
4) Place the test tube in the water bath using a test tube holder and leave it in there for 5 minutes. Make sure the tube is pointing away from you.
5) If the food sample contains a reducing sugar, the solution in the test tube will change from the normal blue colour to green, yellow or brick-red — it depends on how much sugar is in the food.

Use Iodine Solution to Test for Starch

You can also check food samples for the presence of starch. Foods like pasta, rice and potatoes contain a lot of starch. Here's how to do the test:

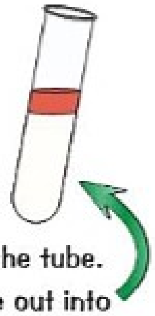
1) Make a food sample and transfer 5 cm^3 of your sample to a test tube.
2) Then add a few drops of iodine solution and gently shake the tube to mix the contents. If the sample contains starch, the colour of the solution will change from browny-orange to black or blue-black.

Use the Biuret Test to Test for Proteins

You can use the biuret test to see if a type of food contains protein.
Meat and cheese are protein rich and good foods to use in this test. Here's how it's done:

1) Prepare a sample of your food and transfer 2 cm^3 of your sample to a test tube.
2) Add 2 cm^3 of biuret solution to the sample and mix the contents of the tube by gently shaking it.
3) If the food sample contains protein, the solution will change from blue to pink or purple. If no protein is present, the solution will stay blue.

Use the Sudan III Test to Test for Lipids



Lipids are found in foods such as olive oil, margarine and milk.
You can test for the presence of lipids in a food using Sudan III stain solution.

1) Prepare a sample of the food you're testing (but you don't need to filter it). Transfer about 5 cm^3 into a test tube.
2) Use a pipette to add 3 drops of Sudan III stain solution to the test tube and gently shake the tube.
3) Sudan III stain solution stains lipids. If the sample contains lipids, the mixture will separate out into two layers. The top layer will be bright red. If no lipids are present, no separate red layer will form at the top of the liquid.

All this talk of food is making me hungry...

Make sure you do a risk assessment before starting these tests — there are a lot of chemicals to use here.

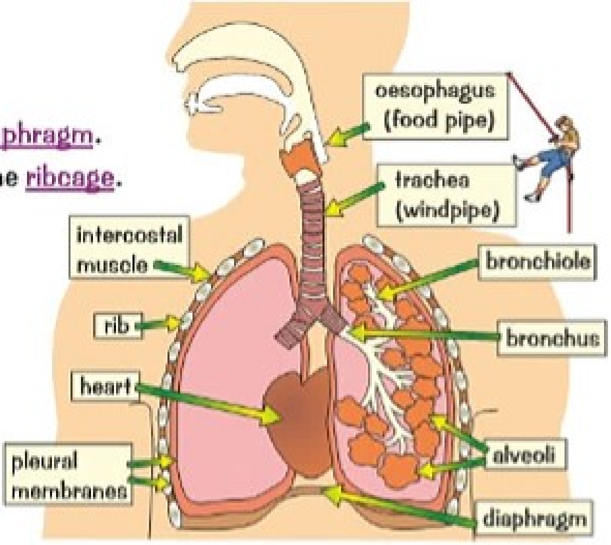
Q1 Name the chemical that you would use to test a sample for the presence of starch. [1 mark]

The Lungs

You need to get oxygen into your bloodstream to supply your cells for respiration. You also need to get rid of carbon dioxide from your blood. This all happens in your lungs when you breathe air in and out.

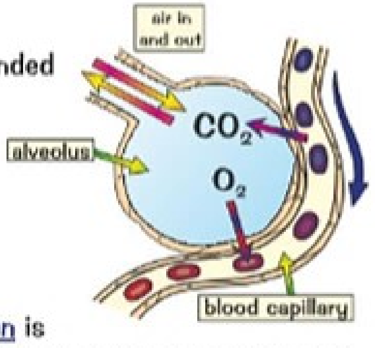
The Lungs Are in the Thorax

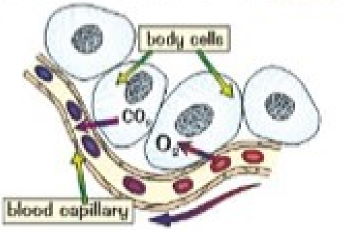
1) The thorax is the top part of your body.
2) It's separated from the lower part of the body by the diaphragm.
3) The lungs are like big pink sponges and are protected by the ribcage. They're surrounded by the pleural membranes.
4) The air that you breathe in goes through the trachea. This splits into two tubes called bronchi (each one is a bronchus), one going to each lung.
5) The bronchi split into progressively smaller tubes called bronchioles.
6) The bronchioles finally end at small bags called alveoli where the gas exchange takes place (see below).



Alveoli Carry Out Gas Exchange in the Body

1) The lungs contain millions and millions of little air sacs called alveoli, surrounded by a network of blood capillaries. This is where gas exchange happens.
2) The blood passing next to the alveoli has just returned to the lungs from the rest of the body, so it contains lots of carbon dioxide and very little oxygen. Oxygen diffuses out of the alveolus (high concentration) into the blood (low concentration). Carbon dioxide diffuses out of the blood (high concentration) into the alveolus (low concentration) to be breathed out.





3) When the blood reaches body cells oxygen is released from the red blood cells (where there's a high concentration) and diffuses into the body cells (where the concentration is low).
4) At the same time, carbon dioxide diffuses out of the body cells (where there's a high concentration) into the blood (where there's a low concentration). It's then carried back to the lungs.

You Can Calculate the Breathing Rate in Breaths Per Minute

Rate calculations pop up all the time in biology, and you're expected to know how to do them — thankfully they're pretty easy. Breathing rate is the sort of thing that you could get asked to work out in your exam.

EXAMPLE:

Bob takes 91 breaths in 7 minutes. Calculate his average breathing rate in breaths per minute.

breaths per minute = number of breaths ÷ number of minutes
= 91 ÷ 7
= 13 breaths per minute

Stop huffing and puffing and just learn it...

Alveoli are really well adapted for carrying out gas exchange. It could be a wise move to learn all about exactly how they're adapted. You met them back on page 24, so head back there if you need a reminder.

Q1 During a 12 minute run, Aaqib took 495 breaths.
Calculate his average breathing rate in breaths per minute. [1 mark]

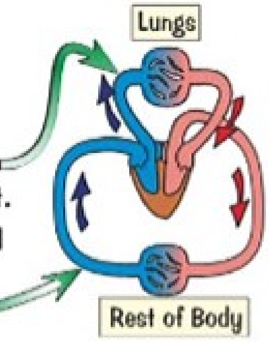
Circulatory System — The Heart

The circulatory system carries food and oxygen to every cell in the body. As well as being a delivery service, it's also a waste collection service — it carries waste products to where they can be removed from the body.

The DOUBLE Circulatory System, Actually

The circulatory system is made up of the heart, blood vessels and blood. Humans have a double circulatory system — two circuits joined together:

1) In the first one, the right ventricle (see below) pumps deoxygenated blood (blood without oxygen) to the lungs to take in oxygen. The blood then returns to the heart.
2) In the second one, the left ventricle (see below) pumps oxygenated blood around all the other organs of the body. The blood gives up its oxygen at the body cells and the deoxygenated blood returns to the heart to be pumped out to the lungs again.



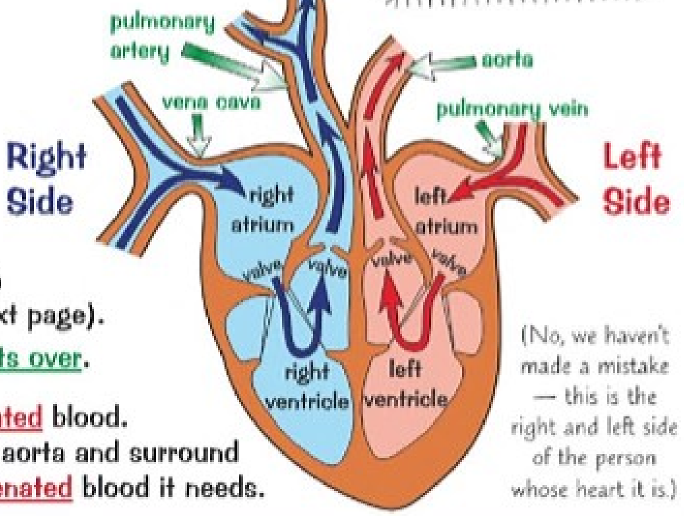
The Heart Contracts to Pump Blood Around The Body

1) The heart is a pumping organ that keeps the blood flowing around the body. The walls of the heart are mostly made of muscle tissue.
2) The heart has valves to make sure that blood flows in the right direction — they prevent it flowing backwards.
3) This is how the heart uses its four chambers (right atrium, right ventricle, left atrium and left ventricle) to pump blood around:

Atrium is when there is just one. Atria is plural.

1) Blood flows into the two atria from the vena cava and the pulmonary vein.
2) The atria contract, pushing the blood into the ventricles.
3) The ventricles contract, forcing the blood into the pulmonary artery and the aorta, and out of the heart.
4) The blood then flows to the organs through arteries, and returns through veins (see next page).
5) The atria fill again and the whole cycle starts over.

The heart also needs its own supply of oxygenated blood. Arteries called coronary arteries branch off the aorta and surround the heart, making sure that it gets all the oxygenated blood it needs.



(No, we haven't made a mistake — this is the right and left side of the person whose heart it is.)

The Heart Has a Pacemaker

1) Your resting heart rate is controlled by a group of cells in the right atrium wall that act as a pacemaker.
2) These cells produce a small electric impulse which spreads to the surrounding muscle cells, causing them to contract.
3) An artificial pacemaker is often used to control heartbeat if the natural pacemaker cells don't work properly (e.g. if the patient has an irregular heartbeat). It's a little device that's implanted under the skin and has a wire going to the heart. It produces an electric current to keep the heart beating regularly.

Okay — let's get to the heart of the matter...

Interesting fact — when doctors use a stethoscope to listen to your heart, it's the valves closing that they hear.

Q1 Which chamber of the heart pumps deoxygenated blood to the lungs? [1 mark]

Q2 What is the function of the coronary arteries? [1 mark]

Circulatory System — Blood Vessels

Want to know more about the circulatory system... Good. Because here's a whole extra page.

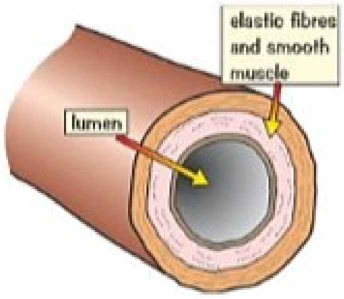
Blood Vessels are Designed for Their Function

There are three different types of blood vessel:

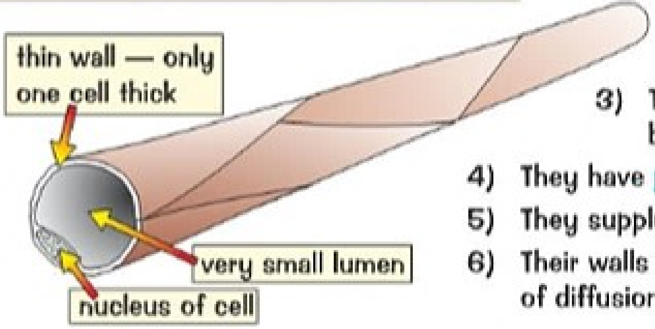
1) ARTERIES — these carry the blood away from the heart.
2) CAPILLARIES — these are involved in the exchange of materials at the tissues.
3) VEINS — these carry the blood to the heart.

Arteries Carry Blood Under Pressure

1) The heart pumps the blood out at high pressure so the artery walls are strong and elastic.
2) The walls are thick compared to the size of the hole down the middle (the "lumen" — silly name!).
3) They contain thick layers of muscle to make them strong, and elastic fibres to allow them to stretch and spring back.



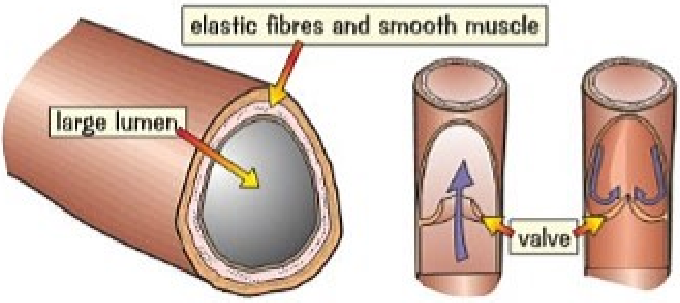
Capillaries are Really Small



1) Arteries branch into capillaries.
2) Capillaries are really tiny — too small to see.
3) They carry the blood really close to every cell in the body to exchange substances with them.
4) They have permeable walls, so substances can diffuse in and out.
5) They supply food and oxygen, and take away waste like CO_2.
6) Their walls are usually only one cell thick. This increases the rate of diffusion by decreasing the distance over which it occurs.

Veins Take Blood Back to the Heart

1) Capillaries eventually join up to form veins. The blood is at lower pressure in the veins so the walls don't need to be as thick as artery walls.
2) They have a bigger lumen than arteries to help the blood flow despite the lower pressure.
3) They also have valves to help keep the blood flowing in the right direction.



You Can Calculate the Rate of Blood Flow

You might get asked to calculate the rate of blood flow in your exam. Thankfully, it's not too tricky. Take a look at this example:

EXAMPLE: 1464 ml of blood passed through an artery in 4.5 minutes. Calculate the rate of blood flow through the artery in ml/min.

rate of blood flow = volume of blood ÷ number of minutes
= 1464 ÷ 4.5 = 325 ml/min

Learn this page — don't struggle in vein...

Here's an interesting fact for you — your body contains about 60 000 miles of blood vessels.

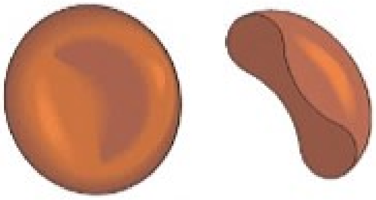
Q1 Describe how veins are adapted to carry blood back to the heart. [2 marks]

Circulatory System — Blood

Blood is a tissue. One of its jobs is to act as a huge transport system. There are four main things in blood...

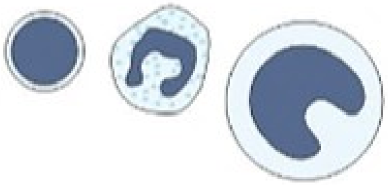
Red Blood Cells Carry Oxygen

1) The job of red blood cells is to carry oxygen from the lungs to all the cells in the body.
2) Their shape is a biconcave disc (like a doughnut) — this gives a large surface area for absorbing oxygen.
3) They don't have a nucleus — this allows more room to carry oxygen.
4) They contain a red pigment called haemoglobin.
5) In the lungs, haemoglobin binds to oxygen to become oxyhaemoglobin. In body tissues, the reverse happens — oxyhaemoglobin splits up into haemoglobin and oxygen, to release oxygen to the cells.



The more red blood cells you've got, the more oxygen can get to your cells. At high altitudes there's less oxygen in the air — so people who live there produce more red blood cells to compensate.

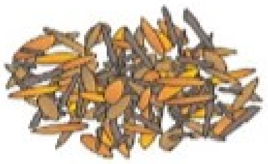
White Blood Cells Defend Against Infection



1) Some can change shape to gobble up unwelcome microorganisms, in a process called phagocytosis.
2) Others produce antibodies to fight microorganisms, as well as antitoxins to neutralise any toxins produced by the microorganisms.
3) Unlike red blood cells, they do have a nucleus.

Platelets Help Blood Clot

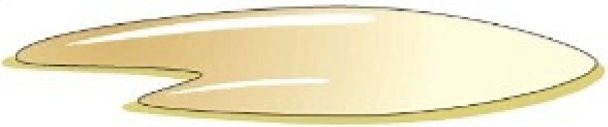
1) These are small fragments of cells. They have no nucleus.
2) They help the blood to clot at a wound — to stop all your blood pouring out and to stop microorganisms getting in. (So basically platelets just float about waiting for accidents to happen.)
3) Lack of platelets can cause excessive bleeding and bruising.



Plasma is the Liquid That Carries Everything in Blood

This is a pale straw-coloured liquid which carries just about everything:

1) Red and white blood cells and platelets.
2) Nutrients like glucose and amino acids. These are the soluble products of digestion which are absorbed from the gut and taken to the cells of the body.
3) Carbon dioxide from the organs to the lungs.
4) Urea from the liver to the kidneys.
5) Hormones.
6) Proteins.
7) Antibodies and antitoxins produced by the white blood cells.



Platelets — ideal for small dinners...

When you're ill the doctor often takes a blood sample for analysis. Blood tests can be used to diagnose loads of things — not just disorders of the blood. This is because the blood transports so many chemicals produced by so many organs... and it's easier to take blood than, say, a piece of muscle.

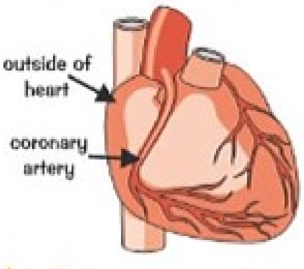
Q1 Describe the purpose of platelets in blood. [1 mark]

Q2 Outline three ways in which red blood cells are adapted to carry oxygen. [3 marks]

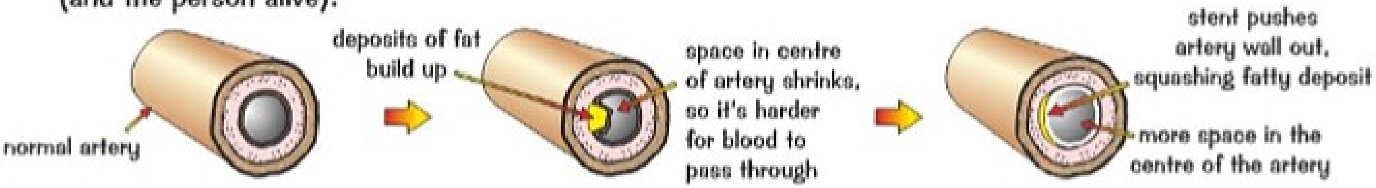
Cardiovascular Disease

Cardiovascular disease is a term used to describe diseases of the heart or blood vessels, for example coronary heart disease. This page tells you all about how stents and statins are used to combat coronary heart disease.

Stents Keep Arteries Open



1) Coronary heart disease is when the coronary arteries that supply the blood to the muscle of the heart get blocked by layers of fatty material building up. This causes the arteries to become narrow, so blood flow is restricted and there's a lack of oxygen to the heart muscle — this can result in a heart attack.
2) Stents are tubes that are inserted inside arteries. They keep them open, making sure blood can pass through to the heart muscles. This keeps the person's heart beating (and the person alive).


normal artery
deposits of fat build up
space in centre of artery shrinks, so it's harder for blood to pass through
stent pushes artery wall out, squashing fatty deposit
more space in the centre of the artery

3) Stents are a way of lowering the risk of a heart attack in people with coronary heart disease. They are effective for a long time and the recovery time from the surgery is relatively quick.
4) On the down side, there is a risk of complications during the operation (e.g. heart attack) and a risk of infection from surgery. There is also the risk of patients developing a blood clot near the stent — this is called thrombosis.

Statins Reduce Cholesterol in the Blood

1) Cholesterol is an essential lipid that your body produces and needs to function properly. However, too much of a certain type of cholesterol (known as 'bad' or LDL cholesterol) can cause health problems.
2) Having too much of this 'bad' cholesterol in the bloodstream can cause fatty deposits to form inside arteries, which can lead to coronary heart disease.
3) Statins are drugs that can reduce the amount of 'bad' cholesterol present in the bloodstream. This slows down the rate of fatty deposits forming.

Statins Have Advantages and Disadvantages

Advantages

1) By reducing the amount of 'bad' cholesterol in the blood, statins can reduce the risk of strokes, coronary heart disease and heart attacks.
2) As well as reducing the amount of 'bad' cholesterol, statins can increase the amount of a beneficial type of cholesterol (known as 'good' or HDL cholesterol) in your bloodstream. This type can remove 'bad' cholesterol from the blood.
3) Some studies suggest that statins may also help prevent some other diseases.

Disadvantages

1) Statins are a long-term drug that must be taken regularly. There's the risk that someone could forget to take them.
2) Statins can sometimes cause negative side effects, e.g. headaches. Some of these side effects can be serious, e.g. kidney failure, liver damage and memory loss.
3) The effect of statins isn't instant. It takes time for their effect to kick in.

Unlike stents and statins, using CGP books only has advantages...

Stents and statins might be good treatments for coronary heart disease, but they're not perfect. Make sure you're aware of the drawbacks as well as the advantages of each. That way, you'll be covered if they come up in the exam.

Q1 a) How can stents be used to reduce the risk of heart attacks in people with coronary heart disease? [2 marks]

b) Suggest two disadvantages of treating patients using stents. [2 marks]

More on Cardiovascular Disease

With more fakery than a 'Rollecks' watch, this page is about artificial hearts, artificial blood and replacing heart valves. All a bit gruesome, I'll admit — but it's life-saving stuff.

An Artificial Heart Can Pump Blood Around the Body

1) If a patient has heart failure, doctors may perform a heart transplant (or heart and lungs transplant if the lungs are also diseased) using donor organs from people who have recently died. However, if donor organs aren't available right away or they're not the best option, doctors may fit an artificial heart.
2) Artificial hearts are mechanical devices that pump blood for a person whose own heart has failed. They're usually only used as a temporary fix, to keep a person alive until a donor heart can be found or to help a person recover by allowing the heart to rest and heal. In some cases though they're used as a permanent fix, which reduces the need for a donor heart.
3) The main advantage of artificial hearts is that they're less likely to be rejected by the body's immune system than a donor heart. This is because they're made from metals or plastics, so the body doesn't recognise them as 'foreign' and attack in the same way as it does with living tissue.
4) But surgery to fit an artificial heart (as with transplant surgery) can lead to bleeding and infection. Also, artificial hearts don't work as well as healthy natural ones — parts of the heart could wear out or the electrical motor could fail. Blood doesn't flow through artificial hearts as smoothly, which can cause blood clots and lead to strokes. The patient has to take drugs to thin their blood and make sure this doesn't happen, which can cause problems with bleeding if they're hurt in an accident.

Faulty Heart Valves Can Be Replaced With Biological or Mechanical Valves

1) The valves in the heart can be damaged or weakened by heart attacks, infection or old age.
2) The damage may cause the valve tissue to stiffen, so it won't open properly. Or a valve may become leaky, allowing blood to flow in both directions rather than just forward. This means that blood doesn't circulate as effectively as normal.
3) Severe valve damage can be treated by replacing the valve. Replacement valves can be ones taken from humans or other mammals (e.g. cows or pigs) — these are biological valves. Or they can be man-made — these are mechanical valves.
4) Replacing a valve is a much less drastic procedure than a whole heart transplant. But fitting artificial valves is still major surgery and there can still be problems with blood clots.

Artificial Blood Can Keep You Alive In An Emergency

1) When someone loses a lot of blood, e.g. in an accident, their heart can still pump the remaining red blood cells around (to get oxygen to their organs), as long as the volume of their blood can be topped up.
2) Artificial blood is a blood substitute, e.g. a salt solution ("saline"), which is used to replace the lost volume of blood. It's safe (if no air bubbles get into the blood) and can keep people alive even if they lose ⅔ of their red blood cells. This may give the patient enough time to produce new blood cells. If not, the patient will need a blood transfusion.
3) Ideally, an artificial blood product would replace the function of the lost red blood cells, so that there's no need for a blood transfusion. Scientists are currently working on products that can do this.

Pity they can't fit me an artificial brain before the exam...

Make sure you know about the consequences of faulty heart valves or heart failure, as well as the advantages and disadvantages of the treatments on this page. Obviously if someone is really ill, it's unlikely that they'd turn down an artificial heart, artificial blood or a valve replacement — but these treatments aren't perfect.

Q1 a) Describe how faulty heart valves can lead to poor blood circulation. [2 marks]
b) Suggest how severe damage to a heart valve can be treated. [1 mark]

Q2 Suggest one disadvantage of treating coronary heart disease with an artificial heart. [1 mark]

Health and Disease

There's not a great deal about diseases and health problems that you can laugh about, so excuse me if this page is a bit dull. It's important stuff to know about though, so you'd best get cracking.

Diseases are a Major Cause of Ill Health

Health is the state of physical and mental wellbeing. Diseases are often responsible for causing ill health.

Diseases Can be Communicable or Non-Communicable

1) Communicable diseases are those that can spread from person to person or between animals and people. They can be caused by things like bacteria, viruses, parasites and fungi. They're sometimes described as contagious or infectious diseases. Measles and malaria are examples of communicable diseases. There's more about them on pages 46-48.
2) Non-communicable diseases are those that cannot spread between people or between animals and people. They generally last for a long time and get worse slowly. Asthma, cancer and coronary heart disease (see page 37) are examples of non-communicable diseases.

Different Types of Disease Sometimes Interact

Sometimes diseases can interact and cause other physical and mental health issues that don't immediately seem related. Here are a few examples:

Pathogen is just the fancy term for a microorganism that can cause a disease when it infects its host.

1) People who have problems with their immune system (the system that your body uses to help fight off infection — see p.49) have an increased chance of suffering from communicable diseases such as influenza (flu), because their body is less likely to be able to defend itself against the pathogen that causes the disease.
2) Some types of cancer can be triggered by infection by certain viruses. For example, infection with some types of hepatitis virus can cause long-term infections in the liver, where the virus lives in the cells. This can lead to an increased chance of developing liver cancer. Another example is infection with HPV (human papilloma virus), which can cause cervical cancer in women.
3) Immune system reactions in the body caused by infection by a pathogen can sometimes trigger allergic reactions such as skin rashes or worsen the symptoms of asthma for asthma sufferers.
4) Mental health issues such as depression can be triggered when someone is suffering from severe physical health problems, particularly if they have an impact on the person's ability to carry out everyday activities or if they affect the person's life expectancy.

Other Factors Can Also Affect Your Health

There are plenty of factors other than diseases that can also affect your health. For example:

1) Whether or not you have a good, balanced diet that provides your body with everything it needs, and in the right amounts. A poor diet can affect your physical and mental health.
2) The stress you are under — being constantly under lots of stress can lead to health issues.
3) Your life situation — for example, whether you have easy access to medicines to treat illness, or whether you have access to things that can prevent you from getting ill in the first place, e.g. being able to buy healthy food or access condoms to prevent the transmission of some sexually transmitted diseases.

If stress can affect your health, why do we have exams...

You really need to get the terms communicable and non-communicable disease into your head. They could come up in the exam and you'd be really sad if you didn't understand the question.

Q1 What is meant by 'health'? [1 mark]

Q2 Why is influenza classed as a communicable disease? [1 mark]

Risk Factors for Non-Communicable Diseases

You've probably heard the term 'risk factor' before. This page has all the info you need to know about them.

Risk Factors Increase Your Chance of Getting a Disease

1) Risk factors are things that are linked to an increase in the likelihood that a person will develop a certain disease during their lifetime. They don't guarantee that someone will get the disease.
2) Risk factors are often aspects of a person's lifestyle (e.g. how much exercise they do). They can also be the presence of certain substances in the environment (e.g. air pollution) or substances in your body (e.g. asbestos fibres — asbestos was a material used in buildings until it was realised that the fibres could build up in your airways and cause diseases such as cancer later in life).
3) Many non-communicable diseases are caused by several different risk factors interacting with each other rather than one factor alone.
4) Lifestyle factors can have different impacts locally, nationally and globally. E.g. in developed countries, non-communicable diseases are more common as people generally have a higher income and can buy high-fat food. Nationally, people from deprived areas are more likely to smoke, have a poor diet and not exercise. This means the incidence of cardiovascular disease, obesity and Type 2 diabetes is higher in those areas. Your individual choices affect the local incidence of disease.

Some Risk Factors Can Cause a Disease Directly

1) Some risk factors are able to directly cause a disease. For example:

    1) Smoking has been proven to directly cause cardiovascular disease, lung disease and lung cancer. It damages the walls of arteries and the cells in the lining of the lungs.
    2) It's thought that obesity can directly cause Type 2 diabetes by making the body less sensitive or resistant to insulin, meaning that it struggles to control the concentration of glucose in the blood.
    3) Drinking too much alcohol has been shown to cause liver disease. Too much alcohol can affect brain function too. It can damage the nerve cells in the brain, causing the brain to lose volume.
    4) Smoking when pregnant can cause lots of health problems for the unborn baby. Drinking alcohol has similar effects.
    5) Cancer can be directly caused by exposure to certain substances or radiation. Things that cause cancer are known as carcinogens. Ionising radiation (e.g. from X-rays) is an example of a carcinogen.

2) However, risk factors are identified by scientists looking for correlations in data, and correlation doesn't always equal cause (see p.9). Some risk factors aren't capable of directly causing a disease. For example, a lack of exercise and a high fat diet are heavily linked to an increased chance of cardiovascular disease, but they can't cause the disease directly. It's the resulting high blood pressure and high 'bad' cholesterol levels (see p.37) that can actually cause it.

Non-Communicable Diseases Can Be Costly

1) The HUMAN cost of non-communicable diseases is obvious. Tens of millions of people around the world die from non-communicable diseases per year. People with these diseases may have a lower quality of life or a shorter lifespan. This not only affects the sufferers themselves, but their loved ones too.
2) It's also important to think about the FINANCIAL cost. The cost to the NHS of researching and treating these diseases is huge — and it's the same for other health services and organisations around the world. Families may have to move or adapt their home to help a family member with a disease, which can be costly. Also, if the family member with the disease has to give up work or dies, the family's income will be reduced. A reduction in the number of people able to work can also affect a country's economy.

Best put down that cake and go for a run...

You might be asked to interpret data about risk factors. See p.9 for a few tips on what you can and can't say.

Q1 Give an example of a type of risk factor other than an aspect of a person's lifestyle. [1 mark]

Cancer

Cancer's not a pleasant topic, but the more we understand about it, the better our chances of avoiding and beating it (and getting good marks in the exam). You're a good way through the topic, so keep going.

Cancer is Caused by Uncontrolled Cell Growth and Division

This uncontrolled growth and division is a result of changes that occur to the cells and results in the formation of a tumour (a mass of cells). Not all tumours are cancerous. They can be benign or malignant:

1) Benign — This is where the tumour grows until there's no more room. The tumour stays in one place (usually within a membrane) rather than invading other tissues in the body. This type isn't normally dangerous, and the tumour isn't cancerous.
2) Malignant — This is where the tumour grows and spreads to neighbouring healthy tissues. Cells can break off and spread to other parts of the body by travelling in the bloodstream. The malignant cells then invade healthy tissues elsewhere in the body and form secondary tumours. Malignant tumours are dangerous and can be fatal — they are cancers.

Risk Factors Can Increase the Chance of Some Cancers

Anyone can develop cancer. Having risk factors doesn't mean that you'll definitely get cancer. It just means that you're at an increased risk of developing the disease. Cancer survival rates have increased due to medical advances such as improved treatment, being able to diagnose cancer earlier and increased screening for the disease.

Risk Factors Can Be Associated With Lifestyle

Scientists have identified lots of lifestyle risk factors for various types of cancer. For example:

1) Smoking — It's a well known fact that smoking is linked to lung cancer, but research has also linked it to other types of cancer too, including mouth, bowel, stomach and cervical cancer.

2) Obesity — Obesity has been linked to many different cancers, including bowel, liver and kidney cancer. It's the second biggest preventable cause of cancer after smoking.

3) UV exposure — People who are often exposed to UV radiation from the Sun have an increased chance of developing skin cancer. People who live in sunny climates and people who spend a lot of time outside are at higher risk of the disease. People who frequently use sun beds are also putting themselves at higher risk of developing skin cancer.
4) Viral infection — Infection with some viruses has been shown to increase the chances of developing certain types of cancer. For example, infection with hepatitis B and hepatitis C viruses can increase the risk of developing liver cancer. The likelihood of becoming infected with these viruses sometimes depends on lifestyle — e.g. they can be spread between people through unprotected sex or sharing needles.

Risk Factors Can Also Be Associated With Genetics

1) Sometimes you can inherit faulty genes that make you more susceptible to cancer.
2) For example, mutations (changes) in the BRCA genes have been linked to an increased likelihood of developing breast and ovarian cancer.

At least our rubbish summers reduce our UV exposure...

Joking aside, UV radiation can still reach us through the clouds, and like many other lifestyle risk factors, we can take steps to reduce the risk, e.g. by keeping covered up outside and wearing sun block.

Q1 What are tumours the result of? [1 mark]

Q2 List three lifestyle factors that can increase the risk of developing cancer. [3 marks]

Plant Cell Organisation

You saw on page 27 how animals keep their specialised cells neat and tidy — plants are in on the act too.

Plant Cells Are Organised Into Tissues And Organs

Plants are made of organs like stems, roots and leaves. Plant organs work together to make organ systems. These can perform the various tasks that a plant needs to carry out to survive and grow — for example, transporting substances around the plant. Plant organs are made of tissues. Examples of plant tissues are:

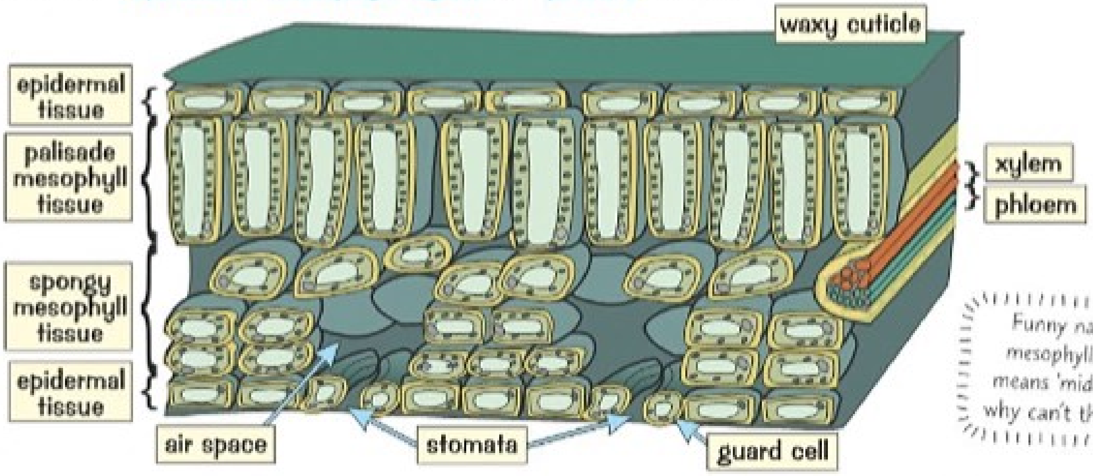
1) Epidermal tissue — this covers the whole plant.
2) Palisade mesophyll tissue — this is the part of the leaf where most photosynthesis happens.
3) Spongy mesophyll tissue — this is also in the leaf, and contains big air spaces to allow gases to diffuse in and out of cells.
4) Xylem and phloem — they transport things like water, mineral ions and food around the plant (through the roots, stems and leaves — see next page for more).
5) Meristem tissue — this is found at the growing tips of shoots and roots and is able to differentiate (change) into lots of different types of plant cell, allowing the plant to grow.

For more on photosynthesis, see page 57.

A merry stem.

The Leaf is an Organ Made Up of Several Types of Tissue

Leaves contain epidermal, mesophyll, xylem and phloem tissues.



Funny names here — like mesophyll. Mesophyll just means 'middle of a leaf'. (So why can't they just say that?)

You need to know how the structures of the tissues that make up the leaf are related to their function:

1) The epidermal tissues are covered with a waxy cuticle, which helps to reduce water loss by evaporation.
2) The upper epidermis is transparent so that light can pass through it to the palisade layer.
3) The palisade layer has lots of chloroplasts (the little structures where photosynthesis takes place). This means that they're near the top of the leaf where they can get the most light.
4) The xylem and phloem form a network of vascular bundles, which deliver water and other nutrients to the entire leaf and take away the glucose produced by photosynthesis. They also help support the structure.
5) The tissues of leaves are also adapted for efficient gas exchange (see page 25). E.g. the lower epidermis is full of little holes called stomata, which let CO_2 diffuse directly into the leaf. The opening and closing of stomata is controlled by guard cells in response to environmental conditions. The air spaces in the spongy mesophyll tissue increase the rate of diffusion of gases.

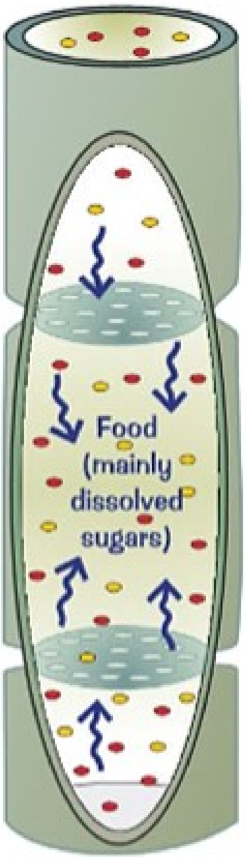
Plant cell organisation — millions of members worldwide...

There are a lot of weird names here, so make sure you spend plenty of time on this page. Maybe you could draw your own leaf diagram and label it with descriptions of the different tissue types. It would make an excellent Christmas present for someone, or an art collector might even want it.

Q1 Describe the characteristics of meristem tissue. [2 marks]

Transpiration and Translocation

You might be surprised to learn that there aren't tiny trucks that transport substances around plants. Then again, you might not be — either way, you need to learn the stuff on this page...



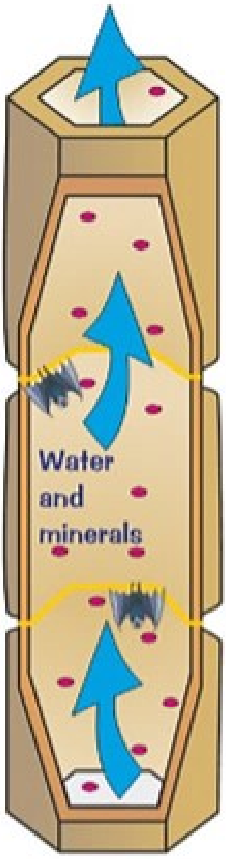
Phloem Tubes Transport *Food:*

1) Made of columns of elongated living cells with small pores in the end walls to allow cell sap to flow through.
2) They transport food substances (mainly dissolved sugars) made in the leaves to the rest of the plant for immediate use (e.g. in growing regions) or for storage.
3) The transport goes in both directions.
4) This process is called translocation.

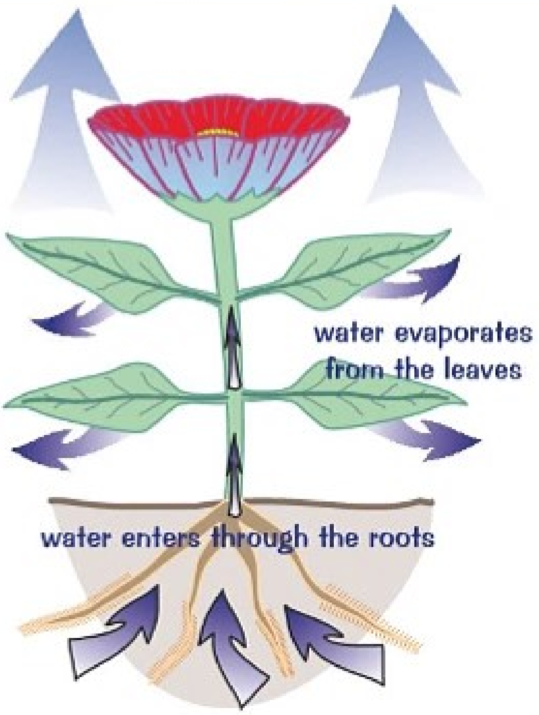
Cell sap is a liquid that's made up of the substances being transported and water.

Xylem Tubes Take Water *Up:*

1) Made of dead cells joined end to end with no end walls between them and a hole down the middle. They're strengthened with a material called lignin.
2) They carry water and mineral ions from the roots to the stem and leaves.
3) The movement of water from the roots, through the xylem and out of the leaves is called the transpiration stream (see below).



Transpiration is the *Loss of Water* from the Plant



1) Transpiration is caused by the evaporation and diffusion (see page 20) of water from a plant's surface. Most transpiration happens at the leaves.
2) This evaporation creates a slight shortage of water in the leaf, and so more water is drawn up from the rest of the plant through the xylem vessels to replace it.
3) This in turn means more water is drawn up from the roots, and so there's a constant transpiration stream of water through the plant.

Head back to page 22 to see how root hair cells are adapted for taking up water.

Transpiration is just a side-effect of the way leaves are adapted for photosynthesis. They have to have stomata in them so that gases can be exchanged easily (see page 25). Because there's more water inside the plant than in the air outside, the water escapes from the leaves through the stomata by diffusion.

Don't let revision stress you out — just go with the phloem...

Phloem transports substances in both directions, but xylem only transports things upwards — xy to the sky.

Q1 Describe the structure of xylem. [3 marks]

Transpiration and Stomata

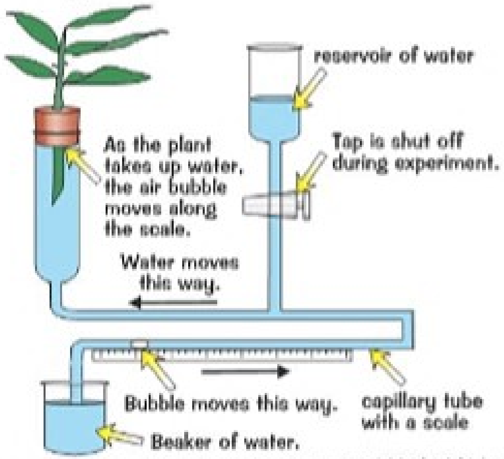
Sorry, more on transpiration. But then it's a quick dash through stomata and out of the other end of the topic.

Transpiration Rate is Affected by Four Main Things

1) **LIGHT INTENSITY** — the brighter the light, the greater the transpiration rate.
Stomata begin to close as it gets darker. Photosynthesis can't happen in the dark, so they don't need to be open to let CO_2 in. When the stomata are closed, very little water can escape.
2) **TEMPERATURE** — the warmer it is, the faster transpiration happens.
When it's warm the water particles have more energy to evaporate and diffuse out of the stomata.
3) **AIR FLOW** — the better the air flow around a leaf (e.g. stronger wind), the greater the transpiration rate.
If air flow around a leaf is poor, the water vapour just surrounds the leaf and doesn't move away. This means there's a high concentration of water particles outside the leaf as well as inside it, so diffusion doesn't happen as quickly. If there's good air flow, the water vapour is swept away, maintaining a low concentration of water in the air outside the leaf. Diffusion then happens quickly, from an area of higher concentration to an area of lower concentration.
4) **HUMIDITY** — the drier the air around a leaf, the faster transpiration happens.
This is like what happens with air flow. If the air is humid there's a lot of water in it already, so there's not much of a difference between the inside and the outside of the leaf. Diffusion happens fastest if there's a really high concentration in one place, and a really low concentration in the other.

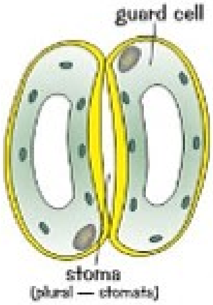
You can estimate the rate of transpiration by measuring the uptake of water by a plant. This is because you can assume that water uptake by the plant is directly related to water loss by the leaves (transpiration).

Set up the apparatus as in the diagram, and then record the starting position of the air bubble. Start a stopwatch and record the distance moved by the bubble per unit time, e.g. per hour. Keep the conditions constant throughout the experiment, e.g. the temperature and air humidity.


reservoir of water
As the plant takes up water, the air bubble moves along the scale.
Tap is shut off during experiment.
Water moves this way.
Bubble moves this way.
capillary tube with a scale
Beaker of water.

This piece of apparatus is called a potometer. Setting it up is quite tough — there are some tips on page 128.

Guard Cells Are Adapted to Open and Close Stomata



1) They have a kidney shape which opens and closes the stomata (page 25) in a leaf.
2) When the plant has lots of water the guard cells fill with it and go plump and turgid. This makes the stomata open so gases can be exchanged for photosynthesis.
3) When the plant is short of water, the guard cells lose water and become flaccid, making the stomata close. This helps stop too much water vapour escaping.
4) Thin outer walls and thickened inner walls make the opening and closing work.
5) They're also sensitive to light and close at night to save water without losing out on photosynthesis.
6) You usually find more stomata on the undersides of leaves than on the top. The lower surface is shaded and cooler — so less water is lost through the stomata than if they were on the upper surface.
7) Guard cells are therefore adapted for gas exchange and controlling water loss within a leaf.

I say stomaaarta, you say stomaaayta...

Different leaves will have different distributions of stomata. You can peel the epidermal tissue off some leaves and mount them on microscope slides (see page 13) to compare them. It's thrilling stuff.

Q1 Explain how low light intensity affects the rate of transpiration. [3 marks]

Revision Questions for Topic 2

Well, that's Topic 2 finished. Now it's time for *the* greatest quiz on Earth. Please hold your excitement in.

- Try these questions and tick off each one when you get it right.
- When you've done all the questions under a heading and are completely happy with it, tick it off.

Cell Organisation (p.27) ☐

1) What is a tissue? ☐
2) Explain what is meant by the term 'organ system'. ☐

The Role of Enzymes and Food Tests (p.28-32) ☐

3) Why can enzymes be described as biological catalysts? ☐
4) Why do enzymes only usually catalyse one reaction? ☐
5) What does it mean when an enzyme has been 'denatured'? ☐
6) Describe how you could investigate the effect of pH on the rate of amylase activity. ☐
7) List the three places where amylase is made in the human body. ☐
8) What is the role of lipases? ☐
9) Where is bile stored? ☐
10) Name the solution that you would use to test for the presence of lipids in a food sample. ☐

The Lungs and Circulatory System (p.33-36) ☐

11) Name the tubes that split off the trachea. ☐
12) Explain the role that alveoli play in gas exchange. ☐
13) Explain why the circulatory system in humans is described as a 'double circulatory system'. ☐
14) Why does the heart have valves? ☐
15) Name the four chambers of the heart. ☐
16) How is the resting heart rate controlled in a healthy heart? ☐
17) How are arteries adapted to carry blood away from the heart? ☐
18) Why do red blood cells not have a nucleus? ☐

Diseases and Risk Factors (p.37-41) ☐

19) Give two advantages and two disadvantages of statins. ☐
20) What is the difference between biological and mechanical replacement heart valves? ☐
21) What is meant by a non-communicable disease? ☐
22) Give an example of where different types of disease might interact in the body. ☐
23) What is meant by a risk factor of a disease? ☐
24) Which type of tumour is cancerous? ☐

Plant Cell Organisation and Transport (p.42-44) ☐

25) List the tissues that make up a leaf. ☐
26) Explain how the structure of the upper epidermal tissue in a leaf is related to its function. ☐
27) What is the function of phloem? ☐
28) What is transpiration? ☐
29) List the four main things that affect transpiration. ☐
30) How could you measure the rate of transpiration? ☐
31) Name the type of cell that helps open and close stomata. ☐

Communicable Disease

If you're hoping I'll ease you gently into this new topic... no such luck. Straight on to the baddies of biology.

There Are Several Types of Pathogen

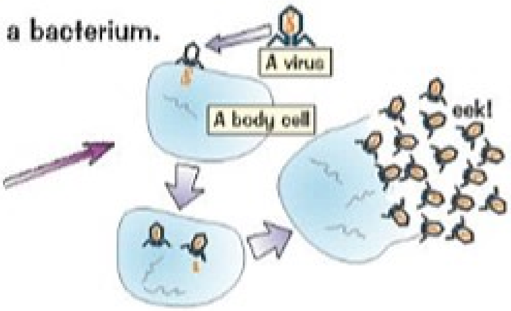
1) Pathogens are microorganisms that enter the body and cause disease.
2) They cause communicable (infectious) diseases — diseases that can easily spread (see p.39).
3) Both plants and animals can be infected by pathogens.

1. Bacteria Are Very Small Living Cells

1) Bacteria are very small cells (about 1/100th the size of your body cells), which can reproduce rapidly inside your body.
2) They can make you feel ill by producing toxins (poisons) that damage your cells and tissues.

2. Viruses Are Not Cells — They're Much Smaller

1) Viruses are not cells. They're tiny, about 1/100th the size of a bacterium.
2) Like bacteria, they can reproduce rapidly inside your body.
3) They live inside your cells and replicate themselves using the cells' machinery to produce many copies of themselves. The cell will usually then burst, releasing all the new viruses.
4) This cell damage is what makes you feel ill.



3. Protists are Single-Celled Eukaryotes

1) There are lots of different types of protists. But they're all eukaryotes (see page 11) and most of them are single-celled.
2) Some protists are parasites. Parasites live on or inside other organisms and can cause them damage. They are often transferred to the organism by a vector, which doesn't get the disease itself — e.g. an insect that carries the protist.

4. Fungi Come in Different Shapes

1) Some fungi are single-celled. Others have a body which is made up of hyphae (thread-like structures).
2) These hyphae can grow and penetrate human skin and the surface of plants, causing diseases.
3) The hyphae can produce spores, which can be spread to other plants and animals.

Pathogens Can Be Spread in Different Ways

Pathogens can be spread in many ways. Here are a few that you need to know about.

1) WATER — Some pathogens can be picked up by drinking or bathing in dirty water. E.g. cholera is a bacterial infection that's spread by drinking water contaminated with the diarrhoea of other sufferers.
2) AIR — Pathogens can be carried in the air and can then be breathed in. Some airborne pathogens are carried in the air in droplets produced when you cough or sneeze — e.g. the influenza virus that causes flu is spread this way.
3) DIRECT CONTACT — Some pathogens can be picked up by touching contaminated surfaces, including the skin. E.g. athlete's foot is a fungus which makes skin itch and flake off. It's most commonly spread by touching the same things as an infected person, e.g. shower floors and towels.

Hooray, I've avoided the classic 'he was a fungi to be with' joke...

Yuck, lots of nasties out there that can cause disease. Plants need to be worried too, as you'll find out.

Q1 Describe how viruses cause cell damage. [2 marks]

Viral, Fungal and Protist Diseases

There are heaps of diseases caused by viruses, fungi and protists, but you just need to know about these ones.

You Need to Know About Three Viral Diseases...

1) Measles is a viral disease. It is spread by droplets from an infected person's sneeze or cough.
2) People with measles develop a red skin rash, and they'll show signs of a fever (a high temperature).
3) Measles can be very serious, or even fatal, if there are complications. For example, measles can sometimes lead to pneumonia (a lung infection) or a brain infection called encephalitis.
4) Most people are vaccinated against measles when they're young.

1) HIV is a virus spread by sexual contact, or by exchanging bodily fluids such as blood. This can happen when people share needles when taking drugs.
2) HIV initially causes flu-like symptoms for a few weeks. Usually, the person doesn't then experience any symptoms for several years. During this time, HIV can be controlled with antiretroviral drugs. These stop the virus replicating in the body.
3) The virus attacks the immune cells (see page 49).
4) If the body's immune system is badly damaged, it can't cope with other infections or cancers. At this stage, the virus is known as late stage HIV infection, or AIDS.

1) Tobacco mosaic virus (TMV) is a virus that affects many species of plants, e.g. tomatoes.
2) It causes a mosaic pattern on the leaves of the plants — parts of the leaves become discoloured.
3) The discolouration means the plant can't carry out photosynthesis as well, so the virus affects growth.

Photosynthesis is important for plant growth because it produces glucose — see page 57.

...a Fungal Disease...

1) Rose black spot is a fungus that causes purple or black spots to develop on the leaves of rose plants. Who'd have guessed. The leaves can then turn yellow and drop off.
2) This means that less photosynthesis can happen, so the plant doesn't grow very well.
3) It spreads through the environment in water or by the wind.
4) Gardeners can treat the disease using fungicides and by stripping the plant of its affected leaves. These leaves then need to be destroyed so that the fungus can't spread to other rose plants.

...and a Disease Caused by a Protist

1) Malaria is caused by a protist (see the previous page).
2) Part of the malarial protist's life cycle takes place inside the mosquito. The mosquitoes are vectors (see the previous page) — they pick up the malarial protist when they feed on an infected animal.
3) Every time the mosquito feeds on another animal, it infects it by inserting the protist into the animal's blood vessels.
4) Malaria causes repeating episodes of fever. It can be fatal.
5) The spread of malaria can be reduced by stopping the mosquitoes from breeding.
6) People can be protected from mosquitoes using insecticides and mosquito nets.

I've heard this page has gone viral...

The examiner could grill you on any one of these diseases, so make sure you know them all inside out.

Q1 What symptom of measles is shown on the skin? [1 mark]

Q2 How can rose black spot be treated so that it doesn't spread to other plants? [2 marks]

Bacterial Diseases and Preventing Disease

Sorry — I'm afraid there are some more diseases to learn about here. This time, they're diseases caused by bacteria. I don't know about you, but I'm starting to feel a bit itchy all over...

You Need to Know About Two Bacterial Diseases

1) Salmonella is a type of bacteria that causes food poisoning.
2) Infected people can suffer from fever, stomach cramps, vomiting and diarrhoea. Pleasant.
3) These symptoms are caused by the toxins that the bacteria produce (see page 46).
4) You can get Salmonella food poisoning by eating food that's been contaminated with Salmonella bacteria, e.g. eating chicken that caught the disease whilst it was alive, or eating food that has been contaminated by being prepared in unhygienic conditions.
5) In the UK, most poultry (e.g. chickens and turkeys) is given a vaccination against Salmonella. This is to control the spread of the disease.

1) Gonorrhoea is a sexually transmitted disease (STD).
2) STDs are passed on by sexual contact, e.g. having unprotected sex.
3) Gonorrhoea is caused by bacteria.
4) A person with gonorrhoea will get pain when they urinate. Another symptom is a thick yellow or green discharge from the vagina or the penis.
5) Gonorrhoea was originally treated with an antibiotic called penicillin, but this has become trickier now because strains of the bacteria have become resistant to it (see page 51).
6) To prevent the spread of gonorrhoea, people can be treated with antibiotics and should use barrier methods of contraception (see page 78), such as condoms.

The Spread of Disease Can Be Reduced or Prevented

There are things that we can do to reduce, and even prevent, the spread of disease. For example:

1) Being hygienic — Using simple hygiene measures can prevent the spread of disease. For example, doing things like washing your hands thoroughly before preparing food or after you've sneezed can stop you infecting another person.

2) Destroying vectors — By getting rid of the organisms that spread disease, you can prevent the disease from being passed on. Vectors that are insects can be killed using insecticides or by destroying their habitat so that they can no longer breed.

3) Isolating infected individuals — If you isolate someone who has a communicable disease, it prevents them from passing it on to anyone else.

4) Vaccination — Vaccinating people and animals against communicable diseases means that they can't develop the infection and then pass it on to someone else. There's more about how vaccination works on page 50.

The spread of disease — mouldy margarine...

OK, I promise, that's it. No more diseases to learn about in this Topic. You may be sick of them already (geddit?) but don't turn this page until you've got all the facts firmly attached to your cranial material.

Q1 What has made it harder to treat gonorrhoea? [1 mark]

Q2 It is important for chefs to wash their hands thoroughly before cooking. Suggest why. [1 mark]

Fighting Disease

The human body has some pretty neat features when it comes to fighting disease.

Your Body Has a Pretty Sophisticated Defence System

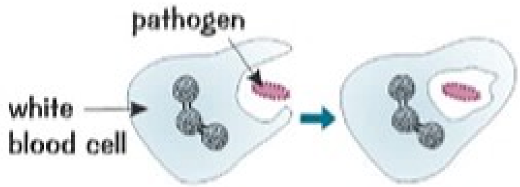
1) The human body has got features that stop a lot of nasties getting inside in the first place.
2) The skin acts as a barrier to pathogens. It also secretes antimicrobial substances which kill pathogens.
3) Hairs and mucus in your nose trap particles that could contain pathogens.
4) The trachea and bronchi (breathing pipework — see page 33) secrete mucus to trap pathogens.
5) The trachea and bronchi are lined with cilia. These are hair-like structures, which waft the mucus up to the back of the throat where it can be swallowed.
6) The stomach produces hydrochloric acid. This kills pathogens that make it that far from the mouth.

Your Immune System Can Attack Pathogens

1) If pathogens do make it into your body, your immune system kicks in to destroy them.
2) The most important part of your immune system is the white blood cells. They travel around in your blood and crawl into every part of you, constantly patrolling for microbes. When they come across an invading microbe they have three lines of attack.

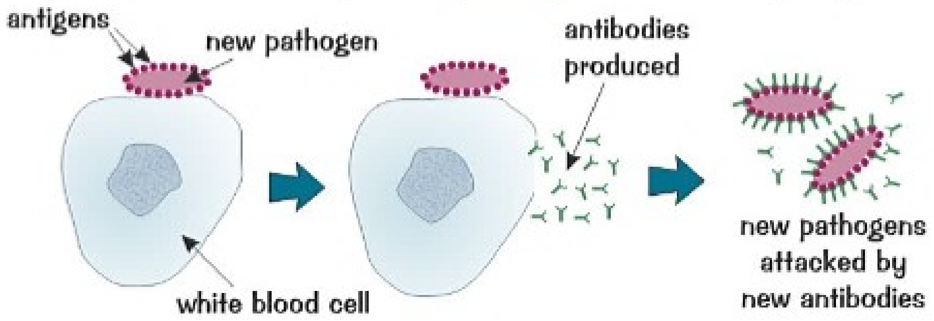
1. Consuming Them

White blood cells can engulf foreign cells and digest them. This is called phagocytosis.



2. Producing Antibodies

1) Every invading pathogen has unique molecules (called antigens) on its surface.
2) When some types of white blood cell come across a foreign antigen (i.e. one they don't recognise), they will start to produce proteins called antibodies to lock onto the invading cells so that they can be found and destroyed by other white blood cells. The antibodies produced are specific to that type of antigen — they won't lock on to any others.
3) Antibodies are then produced rapidly and carried around the body to find all similar bacteria or viruses.
4) If the person is infected with the same pathogen again the white blood cells will rapidly produce the antibodies to kill it — the person is naturally immune to that pathogen and won't get ill.



The white blood cells that produce antibodies are also known as B-lymphocytes.

3. Producing Antitoxins

These counteract toxins produced by the invading bacteria.

Fight disease — blow your nose with boxing gloves...

If you have a low level of white blood cells, you'll be more susceptible to infections. HIV attacks white blood cells and weakens the immune system, making it easier for other pathogens to invade.

Q1 What is phagocytosis? [1 mark]

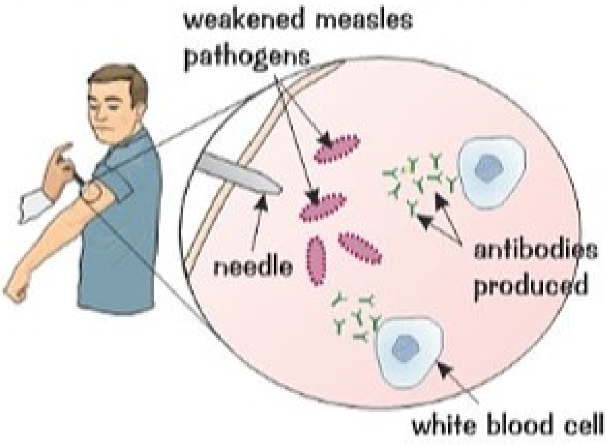
Q2 How are the trachea and the bronchi adapted to defend against the entry of pathogens? [3 marks]

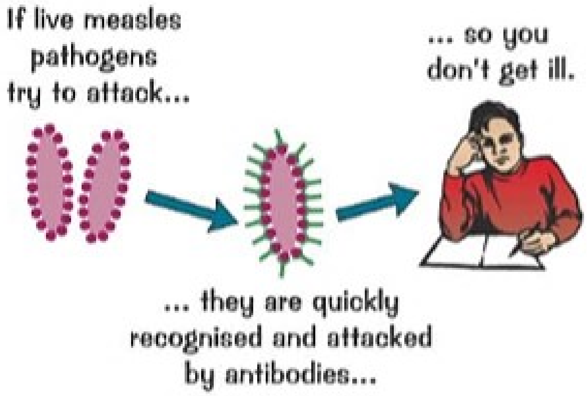
Fighting Disease — Vaccination

Vaccinations have changed the way we fight disease. We don't always have to deal with the problem once it's happened — we can prevent it happening in the first place.

Vaccination — Protects from Future Infections

1) When you're infected with a new pathogen, it takes your white blood cells a few days to learn how to deal with it. But by that time, you can be pretty ill.
2) Vaccinations involve injecting small amounts of dead or inactive pathogens. These carry antigens, which cause your body to produce antibodies to attack them — even though the pathogen is harmless (since it's dead or inactive). For example, the MMR vaccine contains weakened versions of the viruses that cause measles, mumps and rubella (German measles) all in one vaccine.
3) But if live pathogens of the same type appear after that, the white blood cells can rapidly mass-produce antibodies to kill off the pathogen. Cool.




If live measles pathogens try to attack...
... they are quickly recognised and attacked by antibodies...
... so you don't get ill.

There are Pros and Cons of Vaccination

PROS

1) Vaccines have helped control lots of communicable diseases that were once common in the UK (e.g. polio, measles, whooping cough, rubella, mumps, tetanus...). Smallpox no longer occurs at all, and polio infections have fallen by 99%.
2) Big outbreaks of disease — called epidemics — can be prevented if a large percentage of the population is vaccinated. That way, even the people who aren't vaccinated are unlikely to catch the disease because there are fewer people able to pass it on. But if a significant number of people aren't vaccinated, the disease can spread quickly through them and lots of people will be ill at the same time.

CONS

1) Vaccines don't always work — sometimes they don't give you immunity.
2) You can sometimes have a bad reaction to a vaccine (e.g. swelling, or maybe something more serious like a fever or seizures). But bad reactions are very rare.

Prevention is better than cure...

Deciding whether to have a vaccination means balancing risks — the risk of catching the disease if you don't have a vaccine, against the risk of having a bad reaction if you do. As always, you need to look at the evidence. For example, if you get measles (the disease), there's about a 1 in 15 chance that you'll get complications (e.g. pneumonia) — and about 1 in 500 people who get measles actually die. However, the number of people who have a problem with the vaccine is more like 1 in 1 000 000.

Q1 What do vaccinations stimulate white blood cells to produce? [1 mark]

Fighting Disease — Drugs

...a biscuit, nurse? Thanks very much. Sorry, couldn't face that last page — I'm squeamish about needles.*

Some Drugs Relieve Symptoms — Others Cure the Problem

1) Painkillers (e.g. aspirin) are drugs that relieve pain (no, really). However, they don't actually tackle the cause of the disease or kill pathogens, they just help to reduce the symptoms.
2) Other drugs do a similar kind of thing — reduce the symptoms without tackling the underlying cause. For example, lots of "cold remedies" don't actually cure colds.
3) Antibiotics (e.g. penicillin) work differently — they actually kill (or prevent the growth of) the bacteria causing the problem without killing your own body cells. Different antibiotics kill different types of bacteria, so it's important to be treated with the right one.
4) But antibiotics don't destroy viruses (e.g. flu or cold viruses). Viruses reproduce using your body cells, which makes it very difficult to develop drugs that destroy just the virus without killing the body's cells.
5) The use of antibiotics has greatly reduced the number of deaths from communicable diseases caused by bacteria.

Bacteria Can Become Resistant to Antibiotics

1) Bacteria can mutate — sometimes the mutations cause them to be resistant to (not killed by) an antibiotic.
2) If you have an infection, some of the bacteria might be resistant to antibiotics.
3) This means that when you treat the infection, only the non-resistant strains of bacteria will be killed.
4) The individual resistant bacteria will survive and reproduce, and the population of the resistant strain will increase. This is an example of natural selection (see page 96).
5) This resistant strain could cause a serious infection that can't be treated by antibiotics. E.g. MRSA (meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*) causes serious wound infections and is resistant to the powerful antibiotic meticillin.
6) To slow down the rate of development of resistant strains, it's important for doctors to avoid over-prescribing antibiotics. So you won't get them for a sore throat, only for something more serious.
7) It's also important that you finish the whole course of antibiotics and don't just stop once you feel better.

Many Drugs Originally Came From Plants

1) Plants produce a variety of chemicals to defend themselves against pests and pathogens (see page 55).
2) Some of these chemicals can be used as drugs to treat human diseases or relieve symptoms. A lot of our current medicines were discovered by studying plants used in traditional cures. For example:
    - Aspirin is used as a painkiller and to lower fever. It was developed from a chemical found in willow.
    - Digitalis is used to treat heart conditions. It was developed from a chemical found in foxgloves.
3) Some drugs were extracted from microorganisms. For example:
    - Alexander Fleming was clearing out some Petri dishes containing bacteria. He noticed that one of the dishes of bacteria also had mould on it and the area around the mould was free of the bacteria.
    - He found that the mould (called *Penicillium notatum*) on the Petri dish was producing a substance that killed the bacteria — this substance was penicillin.
4) These days, drugs are made on a large scale in the pharmaceutical industry — they're synthesised by chemists in labs. However, the process still might start with a chemical extracted from a plant.

Ahh...Ahh... Ahhhhh Choooooooo — urghh, this page is catching...

Drug development is a big industry. And guess what — you're about to find out some more about it.

Q1 Which type of pathogen can antibiotics be used to kill? [1 mark]

---

*That's my excuse, you'll have to think of your own.

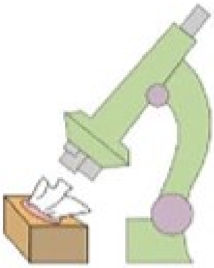
Developing Drugs

New drugs are constantly being developed. But before they can be given to the general public, they have to go through a thorough testing procedure. This is what usually happens...

There are Three Main Stages in Drug Testing

①

1) In preclinical testing, drugs are tested on human cells and tissues in the lab.
2) However, you can't use human cells and tissues to test drugs that affect whole or multiple body systems, e.g. testing a drug for blood pressure must be done on a whole animal because it has an intact circulatory system.



②

1) The next step in preclinical testing is to test the drug on live animals. This is to test efficacy (whether the drug works and produces the effect you're looking for), to find out about its toxicity (how harmful it is) and to find the best dosage (the concentration that should be given, and how often it should be given).
2) The law in Britain states that any new drug must be tested on two different live mammals. Some people think it's cruel to test on animals, but others believe this is the safest way to make sure a drug isn't dangerous before it's given to humans.

But some people think that animals are so different from humans that testing on animals is pointless.

③

1) If the drug passes the tests on animals then it's tested on human volunteers in a clinical trial.
2) First, the drug is tested on healthy volunteers. This is to make sure that it doesn't have any harmful side effects when the body is working normally. At the start of the trial, a very low dose of the drug is given and this is gradually increased.
3) If the results of the tests on healthy volunteers are good, the drugs can be tested on people suffering from the illness. The optimum dose is found — this is the dose of drug that is the most effective and has few side effects.
4) To test how well the drug works, patients are randomly put into two groups. One is given the new drug, the other is given a placebo (a substance that's like the drug being tested but doesn't do anything). This is so the doctor can see the actual difference the drug makes — it allows for the placebo effect (when the patient expects the treatment to work and so feels better, even though the treatment isn't doing anything).
5) Clinical trials are blind — the patient in the study doesn't know whether they're getting the drug or the placebo. In fact, they're often double-blind — neither the patient nor the doctor knows until all the results have been gathered. This is so the doctors monitoring the patients and analysing the results aren't subconsciously influenced by their knowledge.
6) The results of drug testing and drug trials aren't published until they've been through peer review. This helps to prevent false claims.

Peer review is when other scientists check that the work is valid and has been carried out rigorously — see page 1.

The placebo effect doesn't work with revision...

... you can't just expect to get a good mark and then magically get it. I know, I know, there's a lot of information to take in on this page, but just read it through slowly. There's nothing too tricky here — it's just a case of going over it again and again until you've got it all firmly lodged in your memory.

Q1 What is meant by the efficacy of a drug? [1 mark]

Q2 Why do clinical trials of a new drug begin with healthy volunteers? [1 mark]

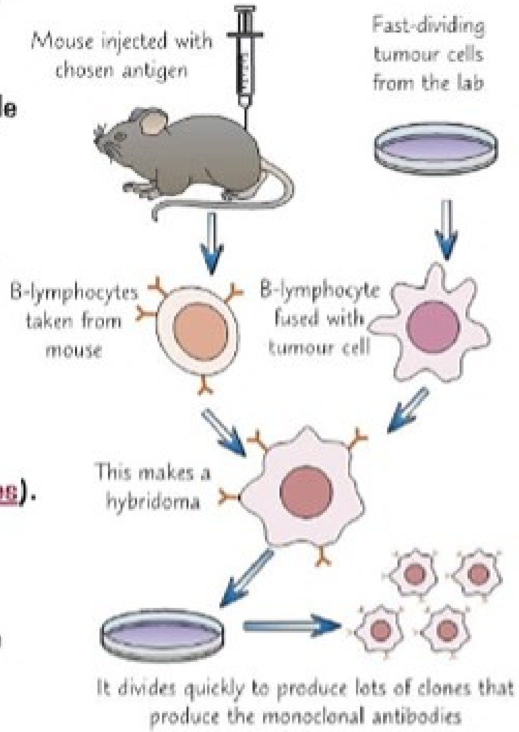
Q3 Why must the results from drug testing be assessed by peer review? [1 mark]

Monoclonal Antibodies

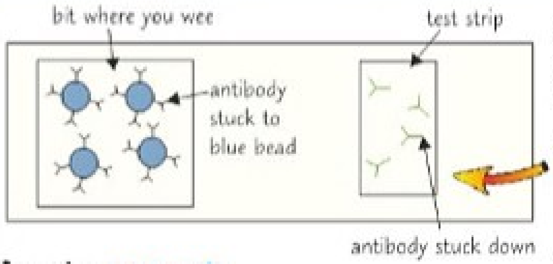
Antibodies aren't only used by the immune system — scientists have engineered them for lots of new uses.

Monoclonal Antibodies are Identical Antibodies

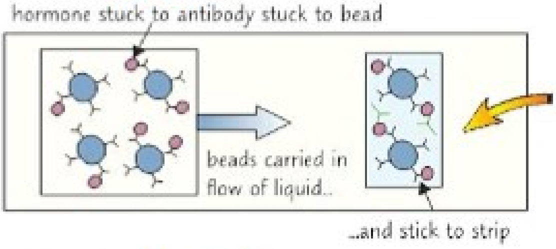
1) Antibodies are produced by B-lymphocytes — a type of white blood cell (see page 49).
2) Monoclonal antibodies are produced from lots of clones of a single white blood cell. This means all the antibodies are identical and will only target one specific protein antigen.
3) However, you can't just grab the lymphocyte that made the antibody and grow more — lymphocytes don't divide very easily.
4) Tumour cells, on the other hand, don't produce antibodies but divide lots — so they can be grown really easily.
5) It's possible to fuse a mouse B-lymphocyte with a tumour cell to create a cell called a hybridoma.
6) Hybridoma cells can be cloned to get lots of identical cells. These cells all produce the same antibodies (monoclonal antibodies). The antibodies can be collected and purified.
7) You can make monoclonal antibodies that bind to anything you want, e.g. an antigen that's only found on the surface of one type of cell. Monoclonal antibodies are really useful because they will only bind to (target) this molecule — this means you can use them to target a specific cell or chemical in the body.


Mouse injected with chosen antigen
Fast-dividing tumour cells from the lab
B-lymphocytes taken from mouse
B-lymphocyte fused with tumour cell
This makes a hybridoma
It divides quickly to produce lots of clones that produce the monoclonal antibodies

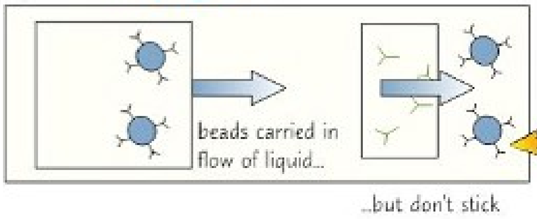
Monoclonal Antibodies Are Used In Pregnancy Tests


bit where you wee
test strip
antibody stuck to blue bead
antibody stuck down

If you're **pregnant**:


hormone stuck to antibody stuck to bead
beads carried in flow of liquid...
...and stick to strip

If you're **not pregnant**:


beads carried in flow of liquid...
...but don't stick

A hormone called HCG is found in the urine of women only when they are pregnant. Pregnancy testing sticks detect this hormone. Here's how they work:

1) The bit of the stick you wee on has some antibodies to the hormone, with blue beads attached.
2) The test strip (the bit of the stick that turns blue if you're pregnant) has some more antibodies to the hormone stuck onto it (so that they can't move).
3) If you're pregnant and you wee on the stick:
   - The hormone binds to the antibodies on the blue beads.
   - The urine moves up the stick, carrying the hormone and the beads.
   - The beads and hormone bind to the antibodies on the strip.
   - So the blue beads get stuck on the strip, turning it blue.
4) If you're not pregnant and you wee on the stick, the urine still moves up the stick, carrying the blue beads. But there's nothing to stick the blue beads onto the test strip, so it doesn't go blue.

The one time when you can write "wee on a stick" in an exam...

There's more on monoclonal antibodies coming next, but don't move on until you understand this page.

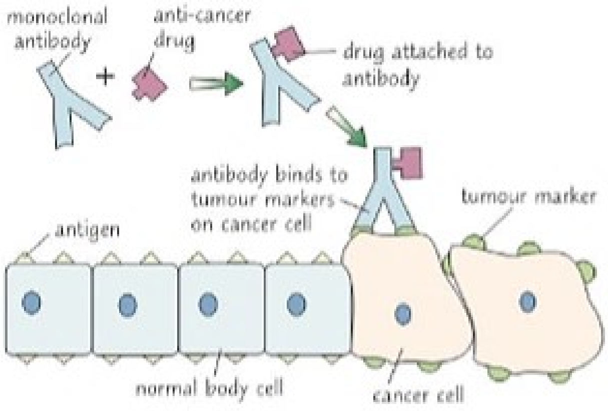
Q1 What is a hybridoma cell made from? [2 marks]

More on Monoclonal Antibodies

Because monoclonal antibodies can be produced to target a specific chemical or cell, they have loads of uses.

Monoclonal Antibodies Can be Used to Treat Diseases...

1) Different cells in the body have different antigens on their cell surface. So you can make monoclonal antibodies that will bind to specific cells in the body (e.g. just liver cells).
2) Cancer cells have antigens on their cell membranes that aren't found on normal body cells. They're called tumour markers.
3) In the lab, you can make monoclonal antibodies that will bind to these tumour markers.
4) An anti-cancer drug can be attached to these monoclonal antibodies. This might be a radioactive substance, a toxic drug or a chemical which stops cancer cells growing and dividing.
5) The antibodies are given to the patient through a drip.
6) The antibodies target specific cells (the cancer cells) because they only bind to the tumour markers.
7) The drug kills the cancer cells but doesn't kill any normal body cells near the tumour.



...and in Laboratories and Research to Find Specific Substances

Monoclonal antibodies can be used to:

1) Bind to hormones and other chemicals in blood to measure their levels.
2) Test blood samples in laboratories for certain pathogens.
3) Locate specific molecules on a cell or in a tissue:
    1) First, monoclonal antibodies are made that will bind to the specific molecules you're looking for.
    2) The antibodies are then bound to a fluorescent dye.
    3) If the molecules are present in the sample you're analysing, the monoclonal antibodies will attach to them, and they can be detected using the dye.

Monoclonal Antibodies Do Have Some Problems Though

1) There are some obvious advantages of monoclonal antibodies. One big one is in cancer treatment. Other cancer treatments (like standard chemotherapy and radiotherapy) can affect normal body cells as well as killing cancer cells, whereas monoclonal antibodies target specific cells. This means the side effects of an antibody-based drug are lower than for standard chemotherapy or radiotherapy.
2) However, monoclonal antibodies do cause more side effects than were originally expected, e.g. they can cause fever, vomiting and low blood pressure. When they were first developed, scientists thought that because they targeted a very specific cell or molecule, they wouldn't create a lot of side effects.
3) This means that they are not as widely used as treatments as scientists had originally thought they might be.

Bonoclonal antibodies — used to detect Irish rock bands...

As you've just found out, monoclonal antibodies are really useful for finding stuff. Imagine having a horde of trained fireflies to search for your lost keys, or phone, or remote control. Instead of you having to search under everything, you just release the fireflies and wait for them to cluster around your lost stuff, in a big obvious glowing mass. Genius.

Q1 List three things that can be bound to a monoclonal antibody to treat cancer. [3 marks]

Plant Diseases and Defences

It's not just us humans that can get diseases — plants get their fair share too.

Plants Need Mineral Ions

Plants need mineral ions from the soil. If there aren't enough, plants suffer deficiency symptoms.

1) Nitrates are needed to make proteins and therefore for growth. A lack of nitrates causes stunted growth.
2) Magnesium ions are needed for making chlorophyll, which is needed for photosynthesis. Plants without enough magnesium suffer from chlorosis and have yellow leaves.

Plants Can Get Diseases

1) Plants can be infected by viral, bacterial and fungal pathogens — see page 47 for some examples. They can also be infested and damaged by insects. For example, aphids are an insect that can cause huge damage to plants.
2) It's usually pretty clear that a plant has a disease. The common signs are:

1) Stunted growth	2) Spots on the leaves	3) Patches of decay (rot)
4) Abnormal growths, e.g. lumps	5) Malformed stems or leaves	6) Discolouration

3) Infestations of pests are easy to spot too — you should be able to see them on the plants.
4) Different plant diseases have different signs. They can be identified by:

   1) Looking up the signs in a gardening manual or on a gardening website.
   2) Taking the infected plant to a laboratory, where scientists can identify the pathogen.
   3) Using testing kits that identify the pathogen using monoclonal antibodies (see page 53).

Plants Have Physical, Chemical and Mechanical Defences...

PHYSICAL DEFENCES

1) Most plant leaves and stems have a waxy cuticle, which provides a barrier to stop pathogens entering.
2) Plant cells themselves are surrounded by cell walls made from cellulose. These form a physical barrier against pathogens that make it past the waxy cuticle.
3) Plants have layers of dead cells around their stems, for example, the outer part of the bark on trees. These act as a barrier to stop pathogens entering.

CHEMICAL DEFENCES

1) Some can produce antibacterial chemicals which kill bacteria — e.g. the mint plant and witch hazel.
2) Other plants produce poisons which can deter herbivores (organisms that eat plants) — e.g. tobacco plants, foxgloves and deadly nightshade.

MECHANICAL DEFENCES

1) Some plants have adapted to have thorns and hairs. These stop animals from touching and eating them.
2) Other plants have leaves that droop or curl when something touches them. This means that they can prevent themselves from being eaten by knocking insects off themselves and moving away from things.
3) Some plants can cleverly mimic other organisms. E.g. the passion flower has bright yellow spots on its leaves which look like butterfly eggs. This stops other butterflies laying their eggs there. Several species of plant in the 'ice plant family' in southern Africa look like stones and pebbles. This tricks other organisms into not eating them.

Symptoms of revision deficiency include nagging parents...

You've made it to the end of the Topic. But don't run off just yet — have a go at this question first.

Q1 How could you tell that a plant has a nitrate deficiency? [1 mark]

Revision Questions for Topic 3

Well, that wraps up Topic 3 — time to put yourself to the test and find out how much you really know.

- Try these questions and tick off each one when you get it right.
- When you've done all the questions under a heading and are completely happy with it, tick it off.

Types of Disease (p.46-48) ☐

1) How can bacteria make us feel ill? ☐
2) Give one way that fungi can cause disease. ☐
3) How does tobacco mosaic virus affect a plant's growth? ☐
4) How are mosquitoes involved in the spread of malaria? ☐
5) What are the symptoms of gonorrhoea? ☐
6) How can destroying vectors help to prevent the spread of disease? ☐

Fighting Disease (p.49-52) ☐

7) What does the stomach produce that can kill pathogens? ☐
8) Give three ways that the white blood cells can defend against pathogens. ☐
9) Give one pro and one con of vaccination. ☐
10) Why is it difficult to develop drugs that kill viruses without also damaging body tissues? ☐
11) Which plant does the painkiller aspirin originate from? ☐
12) What two things are drugs tested on in preclinical testing? ☐
13) What is meant by a drug's toxicity? ☐

Antibodies (p.53-54) ☐

14) What is a monoclonal antibody? ☐
15) Where are the B-lymphocytes taken from when making monoclonal antibodies? ☐
16) Why might a fluorescent dye be added to a monoclonal antibody? ☐
17) Why aren't monoclonal antibodies used as drugs as much as scientists hoped they would be? ☐

Plant Diseases and Defences (p.55) ☐

18) What do plants use magnesium ions for? ☐
19) Give one way of identifying a plant disease. ☐
20) Give one mechanical defence that a plant may have to defend itself. ☐

Photosynthesis and Limiting Factors

First, photosynthesis equations. Then there are some more bits 'n' bobs you should know...

Photosynthesis Produces Glucose Using Light

1) Photosynthesis uses energy to change carbon dioxide and water into glucose and oxygen.
2) It takes place in chloroplasts in green plant cells — they contain pigments like chlorophyll that absorb light.
3) Energy is transferred to the chloroplasts from the environment by light.
4) Photosynthesis is endothermic — this means energy is transferred from the environment in the process.
5) The word equation for photosynthesis is:

$$\text{carbon dioxide} + \text{water} \xrightarrow{\text{light}} \text{glucose} + \text{oxygen}$$

6) Here's the symbol equation too:

$$6CO_2 + 6H_2O \xrightarrow{\text{light}} C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2$$

Plants Use Glucose in Five Main Ways...

1) For respiration — This transfers energy from glucose (see p.61) which enables the plants to convert the rest of the glucose into various other useful substances.
2) Making cellulose — Glucose is converted into cellulose for making strong plant cell walls (see p.11).
3) Making amino acids — Glucose is combined with nitrate ions (absorbed from the soil) to make amino acids, which are then made into proteins.
4) Stored as oils or fats — Glucose is turned into lipids (fats and oils) for storing in seeds.
5) Stored as starch — Glucose is turned into starch and stored in roots, stems and leaves, ready for use when photosynthesis isn't happening, like in the winter. Starch is insoluble, which makes it much better for storing than glucose — a cell with lots of glucose in would draw in loads of water and swell up.

Limiting Factors Affect the Rate of Photosynthesis

1) The rate of photosynthesis is affected by intensity of light, concentration of CO_2 and temperature.
2) Any of these three factors can become the limiting factor — this just means that it's stopping photosynthesis from happening any faster.
3) These factors have a combined effect on the rate of photosynthesis, but which factor is limiting at a particular time depends on the environmental conditions:
   - at night it's pretty obvious that light is the limiting factor,
   - in winter it's often the temperature,
   - if it's warm enough and bright enough, the amount of CO_2 is usually limiting.
4) Chlorophyll can also be a limiting factor of photosynthesis.

The amount of chlorophyll in a plant can be affected by disease (e.g. infection with the tobacco mosaic virus) or environmental stress, such as a lack of nutrients. These factors can cause chloroplasts to become damaged or to not make enough chlorophyll. This means the rate of photosynthesis is reduced because they can't absorb as much light.

Now you'll have something to bore the great-grandkids with...

You'll be able to tell them how, in your day, all you needed was a bit of carbon dioxide and some water and you could make your own entertainment. But at the moment you need to learn this page...

Q1 Name the products of photosynthesis. [2 marks]

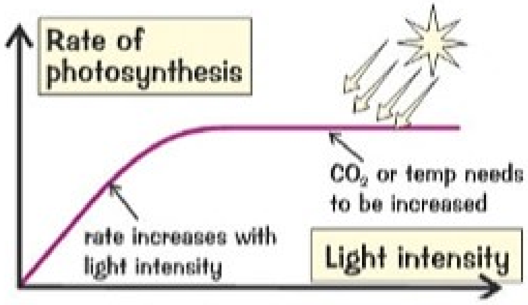
Q2 Apart from temperature, name three other limiting factors of photosynthesis. [3 marks]

The Rate of Photosynthesis

Now that you know light, CO_2 and temperature all affect the rate of photosynthesis, you also need to know how they affect the rate, so you can take a gander at a load of lovely pictures... well, graphs. I've also thrown an experiment and an equation in for good measure. I can tell these pages are going to be your favourites...

Three Important Graphs for Rate of Photosynthesis

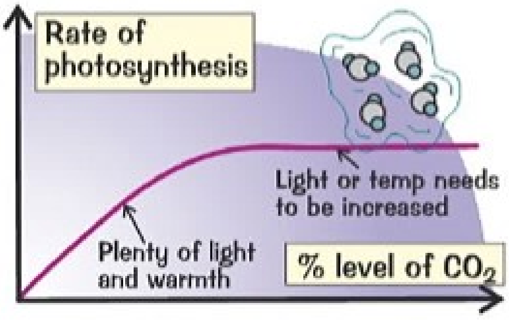
1) Not Enough Light Slows Down the Rate of Photosynthesis



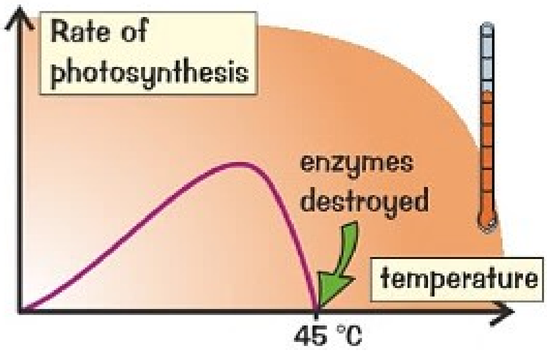
1) Light provides the energy needed for photosynthesis.
2) As the light level is raised, the rate of photosynthesis increases steadily — but only up to a certain point.
3) Beyond that, it won't make any difference — as light intensity increases, the rate will no longer increase. This is because it'll be either the temperature or the CO_2 level which is now the limiting factor, not light.
4) In the lab you can change the light intensity by moving a lamp closer to or further away from your plant (see the next page for this experiment).
5) But if you just plot the rate of photosynthesis against "distance of lamp from the plant", you get a weird-shaped graph. To get a graph like the one above you either need to measure the light intensity at the plant using a light meter or do a bit of nifty maths with your results.

2) Too Little Carbon Dioxide Also Slows it Down

1) CO_2 is one of the raw materials needed for photosynthesis.
2) As with light intensity, the amount of CO_2 will only increase the rate of photosynthesis up to a point. After this the graph flattens out — as the amount of CO_2 increases, the rate no longer increases. This shows that CO_2 is no longer the limiting factor.
3) As long as light and CO_2 are in plentiful supply then the factor limiting photosynthesis must be temperature.



3) The Temperature has to be Just Right



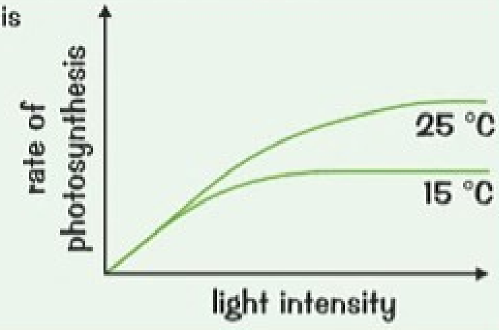
1) Usually, if the temperature is the limiting factor it's because it's too low — the enzymes needed for photosynthesis work more slowly at low temperatures.
2) But if the plant gets too hot, the enzymes it needs for photosynthesis and its other reactions will be damaged.
3) This happens at about 45 °C (which is pretty hot for outdoors, although greenhouses can get that hot if you're not careful).

The Rate of Photosynthesis

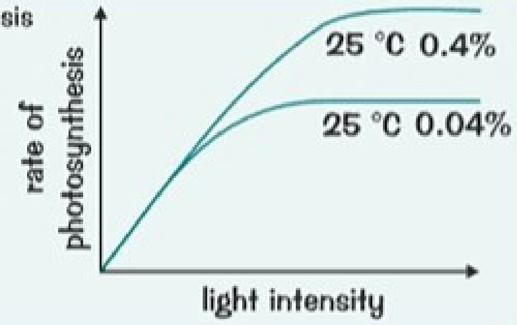
One Graph May Show the Effect of Many Limiting Factors

You could get a graph that shows more than one limiting factor on the rate of photosynthesis, for example:

1) The graph on the right shows how the rate of photosynthesis is affected by light intensity and temperature.
2) At the start, both of the lines show that as the light intensity increases, the rate of photosynthesis increases steadily.
3) But the lines level off when light is no longer the limiting factor. The line at 25 °C levels off at a higher point than the one at 15 °C, showing that temperature must have been a limiting factor at 15 °C.



1) The graph on the right shows how the rate of photosynthesis is affected by light intensity and CO_2 concentration.
2) Again, both the lines level off when light is no longer the limiting factor.
3) The line at the higher CO_2 concentration of 0.4% levels off at a higher point than the one at 0.04%. This means CO_2 concentration must have been a limiting factor at 0.04% CO_2. The limiting factor here isn't temperature because it's the same for both lines (25 °C).

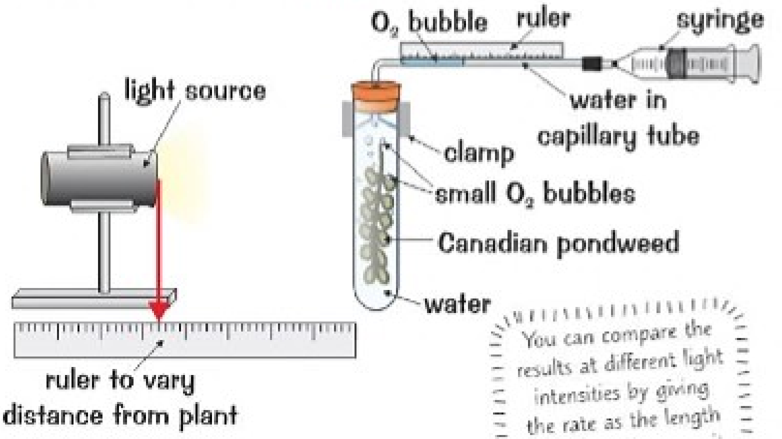


Oxygen Production Shows the Rate of Photosynthesis

PRACTICAL

Canadian pondweed can be used to measure the effect of light intensity on the rate of photosynthesis. The rate at which the pondweed produces oxygen corresponds to the rate at which it's photosynthesising — the faster the rate of oxygen production, the faster the rate of photosynthesis.

Here's how the experiment works:



1) A source of white light is placed at a specific distance from the pondweed.
2) The pondweed is left to photosynthesise for a set amount of time. As it photosynthesises, the oxygen released will collect in the capillary tube.
3) At the end of the experiment, the syringe is used to draw the gas bubble in the tube up alongside a ruler and the length of the gas bubble is measured. This is proportional to the volume of O_2 produced.
4) For this experiment, any variables that could affect the results should be controlled, e.g. the temperature and time the pondweed is left to photosynthesise.
5) The experiment is repeated twice with the light source at the same distance and the mean volume of O_2 produced is calculated.
6) Then the whole experiment is repeated with the light source at different distances from the pondweed.

You can compare the results at different light intensities by giving the rate as the length of the bubble per unit time, e.g. cm/min.

The apparatus above can be altered to measure the effect of temperature or CO_2 on photosynthesis. E.g. the test tube of pondweed can be put into a water bath at a set temperature, or a measured amount of sodium hydrogencarbonate can be dissolved in the water (which gives off CO_2). The experiment can then be repeated with different temperatures of water / concentrations of sodium hydrogencarbonate.

The Rate of Photosynthesis

The Inverse Square Law Links Light Intensity and Distance

1) In the experiment on the previous page, when the lamp is moved away from the pondweed, the amount of light that reaches the pondweed decreases.
2) You can say that as the distance increases, the light intensity decreases. In other words, distance and light intensity are inversely proportional to each other.
3) However, it's not quite as simple as that. It turns out that light intensity decreases in proportion to the square of the distance. This is called the inverse square law and is written out like this:

This is the 'proportional to' symbol.

$$\text{light intensity} \propto \frac{1}{\text{distance (d)}^2}$$

Putting one over the distance shows the inverse.

The distance is squared.

4) The inverse square law means that if you halve the distance, the light intensity will be four times greater and if you third the distance, the light intensity will be nine times greater. Likewise, if you double the distance, the light intensity will be four times smaller and if you treble the distance, the light intensity will be nine times smaller.
5) You can use $1/d^2$ as a measure of light intensity.

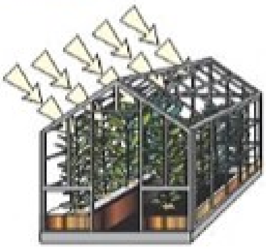
EXAMPLE:

Use the inverse square law to calculate the light intensity when the lamp is 10 cm from the pondweed.

1) Use the formula $\frac{1}{d^2}$. $\quad$ light intensity = $\frac{1}{d^2}$
2) Fill in the values you know — you're given the distance, so put that in. $\quad$ light intensity = $\frac{1}{10^2}$
3) Calculate the answer. $\quad$ = 0.01 a.u.

'a.u.' stands for 'arbitrary units'.

You can Artificially Create the Ideal Conditions for Farming



1) The most common way to artificially create the ideal environment for plants is to grow them in a greenhouse.
2) Greenhouses help to trap the Sun's heat, and make sure that the temperature doesn't become limiting. In winter a farmer or gardener might use a heater as well to keep the temperature at the ideal level. In summer it could get too hot, so they might use shades and ventilation to cool things down.
3) Light is always needed for photosynthesis, so commercial farmers often supply artificial light after the Sun goes down to give their plants more quality photosynthesis time.
4) Farmers and gardeners can also increase the level of carbon dioxide in the greenhouse. E.g. by using a paraffin heater to heat the greenhouse. As the paraffin burns, it makes carbon dioxide as a by-product.
5) Keeping plants enclosed in a greenhouse also makes it easier to keep them free from pests and diseases. The farmer can add fertilisers to the soil as well, to provide all the minerals needed for healthy growth.
6) Sorting all this out costs money — but if the farmer can keep the conditions just right for photosynthesis, the plants will grow much faster and a decent crop can be harvested much more often, which can then be sold. It's important that a farmer supplies just the right amount of heat, light, etc. — enough to make the plants grow well, but not more than the plants need, as this would just be wasting money.

Don't blame it on the sunshine, don't blame it on the CO_2...

Now don't let the inverse square law put you off learning everything on these past three pages.

Q1 An experiment was carried out to find out the effect of temperature on the rate of photosynthesis. Name two variables that should have been controlled in this experiment. [2 marks]

Q2 Write down the inverse square law. [1 mark]

Respiration and Metabolism

You need energy to keep your body going. Energy comes from food, and it's transferred by respiration.

Respiration is NOT "Breathing In and Out"

Respiration involves many reactions. These are really important reactions, as respiration transfers the energy that the cell needs to do just about everything — this energy is used for all living processes.

1) Respiration is not breathing in and breathing out, as you might think.
2) Respiration is the process of transferring energy from the breakdown of glucose (sugar) — and it goes on in every cell in your body continuously.
3) It happens in plants too. All living things respire. It's how they transfer energy from their food to their cells.

RESPIRATION is the process of TRANSFERRING ENERGY FROM GLUCOSE, which goes on IN EVERY CELL.

4) Respiration is exothermic — it transfers energy to the environment.

Respiration Transfers Energy for All Kinds of Things

Here are three examples of how organisms use the energy transferred by respiration:

1) To build up larger molecules from smaller ones (like proteins from amino acids — see below).
2) In animals it's used to allow the muscles to contract (so they can move about).
3) In mammals and birds the energy is used to keep their body temperature steady in colder surroundings. (Unlike other animals, mammals and birds keep their bodies constantly warm.)

Metabolism is ALL the Chemical Reactions in an Organism

1) In a cell there are lots of chemical reactions happening all the time, which are controlled by enzymes.
2) Many of these reactions are linked together to form bigger reactions:

$$\text{reactant} \xrightarrow{\text{enzyme}} \text{product} \xrightarrow{\text{enzyme}} \text{product} \xrightarrow{\text{enzyme}} \text{product}$$

Enzymes are biological catalysts — see p.28.

3) In some of these reactions, larger molecules are made from smaller ones. For example:
   - Lots of small glucose molecules are joined together in reactions to form starch (a storage molecule in plant cells), glycogen (a storage molecule in animal cells) and cellulose (a component of plant cell walls).
   - Lipid molecules are each made from one molecule of glycerol and three fatty acids.
   - Glucose is combined with nitrate ions to make amino acids, which are then made into proteins.
4) In other reactions, larger molecules are broken down into smaller ones. For example:
   - Glucose is broken down in respiration. Respiration transfers energy to power all the reactions in the body that make molecules.
   - Excess protein is broken down in a reaction to produce urea. Urea is then excreted in urine.
5) The sum (total) of all of the reactions that happen in a cell or the body is called its metabolism.

Don't stop respirin' — hold onto that feelin'...

Isn't it strange to think that each individual living cell in your body is respiring every second of every day, transferring energy from the food you eat. This energy is used to make molecules that our cells need.

Q1 Give two examples of how animals use the energy transferred by respiration. [2 marks]

Q2 What is metabolism? [1 mark]

Aerobic and Anaerobic Respiration

There are two types of respiration, don't cha know...

Aerobic Respiration Needs Plenty of Oxygen

1) Aerobic respiration is respiration using oxygen.
   It's the most efficient way to transfer energy from glucose.
2) Aerobic respiration goes on all the time in plants and animals.
3) Most of the reactions in aerobic respiration happen inside mitochondria (see page 11).
4) Here are the word and symbol equations for aerobic respiration:

glucose + oxygen ⟶ carbon dioxide + water

$$C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2 \longrightarrow 6CO_2 + 6H_2O$$

Anaerobic Respiration is Used if There's Not Enough Oxygen

When you do vigorous exercise and your body can't supply enough oxygen to your muscles, they start doing anaerobic respiration as well as aerobic respiration.

1) "Anaerobic" just means "without oxygen". It's the incomplete breakdown of glucose, making lactic acid.
2) Here's the word equation for anaerobic respiration in muscle cells:

glucose ⟶ lactic acid

3) Anaerobic respiration does not transfer nearly as much energy as aerobic respiration.
   This is because glucose isn't fully oxidised (because it doesn't combine with oxygen).
4) So, anaerobic respiration is only useful in emergencies, e.g. during exercise when it allows you to keep on using your muscles for a while longer.

Anaerobic Respiration in Plants and Yeast is Slightly Different

1) Plants and yeast cells can respire without oxygen too, but they produce ethanol (alcohol) and carbon dioxide instead of lactic acid.
2) Here is the word equation for anaerobic respiration in plants and yeast cells:

glucose ⟶ ethanol + carbon dioxide

Yeast are single-celled organisms.

3) Anaerobic respiration in yeast cells is called fermentation.
4) In the food and drinks industry, fermentation by yeast is of great value because it's used to make bread and alcoholic drinks, e.g. beer and wine.
5) In bread-making, it's the carbon dioxide from fermentation that makes bread rise.
6) In beer and wine-making, it's the fermentation process that produces alcohol.

I'd like a ham and fermentation sandwich please... yum

Fermentation is a really important process because of its use in making alcoholic drinks and bread. We drink and eat so much of these that making them is big bucks. And it's all down to tiny yeast cells.

Q1 What are the reactants of aerobic respiration? [2 marks]

Q2 What is the process of anaerobic respiration in yeast called? [1 mark]

Exercise

When you exercise, your body responds in different ways to get enough energy to your cells.

When You Exercise You Respire More

1) Muscles need energy from respiration to contract. When you exercise, some of your muscles contract more frequently than normal so you need more energy. This energy comes from increased respiration.
2) The increase in respiration in your cells means you need to get more oxygen into them.
3) Your breathing rate and breath volume increase to get more oxygen into the blood, and your heart rate increases to get this oxygenated blood around the body faster. This removes CO_2 more quickly at the same time.
4) When you do really vigorous exercise (like sprinting) your body can't supply oxygen to your muscles quickly enough, so they start respiring anaerobically (see the previous page).
5) This is NOT the best way to transfer energy from glucose because lactic acid builds up in the muscles, which gets painful.
6) Long periods of exercise also cause muscle fatigue — the muscles get tired and then stop contracting efficiently.

Remember, lactic acid is formed from the incomplete oxidation of glucose.

Anaerobic Respiration Leads to an Oxygen Debt

1) After resorting to anaerobic respiration, when you stop exercising you'll have an "oxygen debt".
2) An oxygen debt is the amount of extra oxygen your body needs to react with the build up of lactic acid and remove it from the cells. Oxygen reacts with the lactic acid to form harmless CO_2 and water.
3) In other words you have to "repay" the oxygen that you didn't get to your muscles in time, because your lungs, heart and blood couldn't keep up with the demand earlier on.
4) This means you have to keep breathing hard for a while after you stop, to get more oxygen into your blood, which is transported to the muscle cells.
5) The pulse and breathing rate stay high whilst there are high levels of lactic acid and CO_2.
6) Your body also has another way of coping with the high level of lactic acid — the blood that enters your muscles transports the lactic acid to the liver. In the liver, the lactic acid is converted back to glucose.

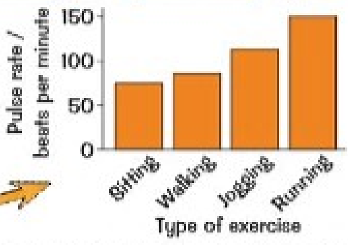
You Can Investigate The Effect of Exercise on The Body

1) You can measure breathing rate by counting breaths, and heart rate by taking the pulse.

You put two fingers on the inside of your wrist or your neck and count the number of pulses in 1 minute.

2) E.g. you could take your pulse after:
   - sitting down for 5 minutes,
   - then after 5 minutes of gentle walking,
   - then again after 5 minutes of slow jogging,
   - then again after running for 5 minutes,

   and plot your results in a bar chart.



3) Your pulse rate will increase the more intense the exercise is, as your body needs to get more oxygen to the muscles and take more carbon dioxide away from the muscles.
4) To reduce the effect of any random errors on your results, do it as a group and plot the average pulse rate for each exercise.

There's more about random error on page 5.

Oxygen debt — cheap to pay back...

At the end of a sprinting race you often see athletes breathing hard — now you know this is to get rid of the lactic acid that's built up in the muscles. But remember, the liver plays a role in breaking it down too.

Q1 What causes muscle fatigue? [1 mark]

Q2 Explain what an "oxygen debt" is. [1 mark]

Revision Questions for Topic 4

Well, it's all over for Topic 4 folks — but I know how much you'll miss it, so here are some questions on it...

- Try these questions and tick off each one when you get it right.
- When you've done all the questions under a heading and are completely happy with it, tick it off.

Photosynthesis (p.57-60) ☐

1) Where in a plant cell does photosynthesis take place? ☐
2) How is energy transferred to a plant from its environment for photosynthesis? ☐
3) What is an endothermic reaction? ☐
4) What is the word equation for photosynthesis? ☐
5) What type of molecule is formed from combining glucose molecules with nitrate ions? ☐
6) Why do plants store glucose as starch? ☐
7) What is meant by a 'limiting factor' of photosynthesis? ☐
8) What effect would a low carbon dioxide concentration have on the rate of photosynthesis? ☐
9) What effect would a temperature above 45 °C have on the rate of photosynthesis? ☐
10) Describe a method that could be used to measure the effect of light intensity on the rate of photosynthesis. ☐
11) In the inverse square law, how are light intensity and distance linked? ☐
12) Give one way that the temperature can be decreased in a greenhouse. ☐
13) Give one way that the level of carbon dioxide can be increased in a greenhouse. ☐

Respiration and Metabolism (p.61-63) ☐

14) What is respiration? ☐
15) What is an exothermic reaction? ☐
16) What process transfers energy to make new molecules in cells? ☐
17) Give three examples of metabolic reactions. ☐
18) Name the products of aerobic respiration. ☐
19) What is produced by anaerobic respiration in muscle cells? ☐
20) What is the word equation for anaerobic respiration in yeast cells? ☐
21) Name two products of the food and drink industry that fermentation is needed for. ☐
22) Give three things that increase to supply the muscles with more oxygenated blood during exercise. ☐
23) What happens to muscles when they become fatigued? ☐
24) In what organ is lactic acid converted back to glucose? ☐

Homeostasis

Homeostasis — a word that strikes fear into the heart of many a GCSE student. But it's really not that bad at all. This page is a brief introduction to the topic, so you need to nail all of this before you can move on.

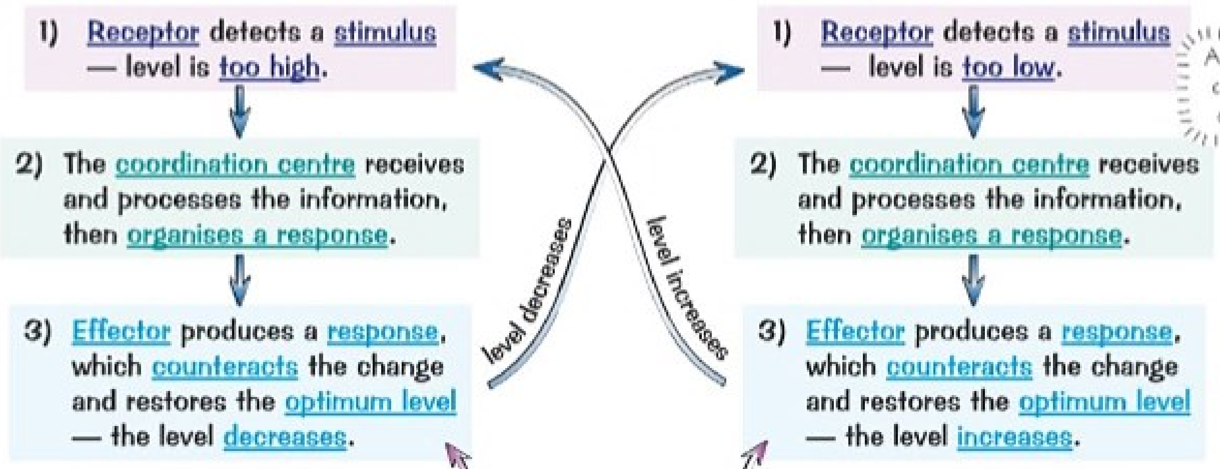
Homeostasis — Maintaining a Stable Internal Environment

I'm not really a doctor — this clipboard isn't holding anything. But take it from me, homeostasis is one important topic.

1) The conditions inside your body need to be kept steady, even when the external environment changes. This is really important because your cells need the right conditions in order to function properly, including the right conditions for enzyme action (see p.28).
2) Homeostasis is all about the regulation of the conditions inside your body (and cells) to maintain a stable internal environment, in response to changes in both internal and external conditions.
3) You have loads of automatic control systems in your body that regulate your internal environment — these include both nervous and hormonal communication systems. For example, there are control systems that maintain your body temperature (see page 72), your blood glucose level (see page 74) and your water content (see page 75).
4) All your automatic control systems are made up of three main components which work together to maintain a steady condition — cells called receptors, coordination centres (including the brain, spinal cord and pancreas) and effectors.

Negative Feedback Counteracts Changes

Your automatic control systems keep your internal environment stable using a mechanism called negative feedback. When the level of something (e.g. water or temperature) gets too high or too low, your body uses negative feedback to bring it back to normal.



1) Receptor detects a stimulus — level is too high.
2) The coordination centre receives and processes the information, then organises a response.
3) Effector produces a response, which counteracts the change and restores the optimum level — the level decreases.

1) Receptor detects a stimulus — level is too low.
2) The coordination centre receives and processes the information, then organises a response.
3) Effector produces a response, which counteracts the change and restores the optimum level — the level increases.

A stimulus is a change in the environment.

The effectors will just carry on producing the responses for as long as they're stimulated by the coordination centre. This might cause the opposite problem — making the level change too much (away from the ideal). Luckily the receptor detects if the level becomes too different and negative feedback starts again.

This process happens without you thinking about it — it's all automatic.

If you do enough revision, you can avoid negative feedback...

Negative feedback is a fancy-sounding name for a not-very-complicated idea. It's common sense really. For example, if you looked sad, I'd try and cheer you up. And if you looked really happy, I'd probably start to annoy you by flicking the backs of your ears. It stops things getting out of balance, I think.

Q1 Why do the internal conditions of your body need to be regulated? [1 mark]

Q2 Name the component of a control system that detects stimuli. [1 mark]

The Nervous System

Organisms need to respond to stimuli (changes in the environment) in order to survive. A single-celled organism can just respond to its environment, but the cells of multicellular organisms need to communicate with each other first. So as multicellular organisms evolved, they developed nervous and hormonal communication systems.

The Nervous System Detects and Reacts to Stimuli

The nervous system means that humans can react to their surroundings and coordinate their behaviour.

The Nervous System is made up of Different Parts

Central Nervous System (CNS)

In vertebrates (animals with backbones) this consists of the brain and spinal cord only. In mammals, the CNS is connected to the body by sensory neurones and motor neurones.

Sensory Neurones

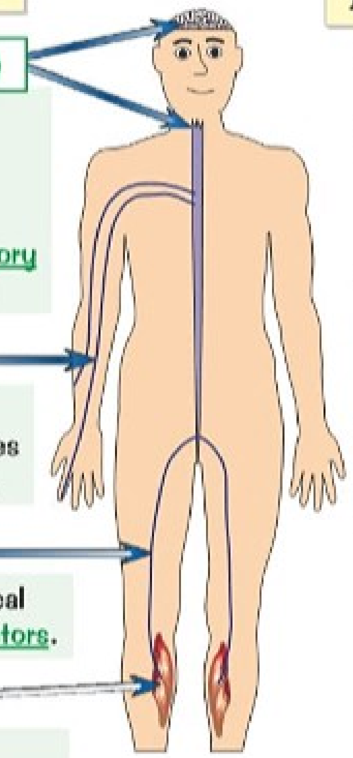
The neurones that carry information as electrical impulses from the receptors to the CNS.

Motor Neurones

The neurones that carry electrical impulses from the CNS to effectors.

Effectors

All your muscles and glands, which respond to nervous impulses.



Receptors and Effectors can form part of Complex Organs

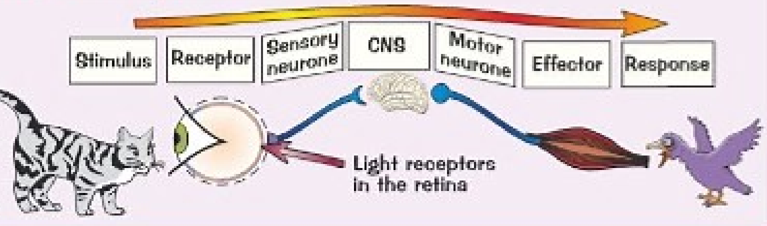
1) Receptors are the cells that detect stimuli.
2) There are many different types of receptors, such as taste receptors on the tongue and sound receptors in the ears.
3) Receptors can form part of larger, complex organs, e.g. the retina of the eye is covered in light receptor cells.
4) Effectors respond to nervous impulses and bring about a change.
5) Muscles and glands are known as effectors — they respond in different ways. Muscles contract in response to a nervous impulse, whereas glands secrete hormones.

The Central Nervous System (CNS) Coordinates the Response

The CNS is a coordination centre — it receives information from the receptors and then coordinates a response (decides what to do about it). The response is carried out by effectors.

For example, a small bird is eating some seed...

1) ...when, out of the corner of its eye, it spots a cat skulking towards it (this is the stimulus).
2) The receptors in the bird's eye are stimulated. Sensory neurones carry the information from the receptors to the CNS.
3) The CNS decides what to do about it.
4) The CNS sends information to the muscles in the bird's wings (the effectors) along motor neurones. The muscles contract and the bird flies away to safety.



Don't let the thought of exams play on your nerves...

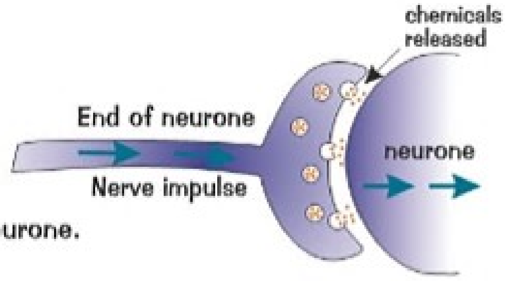
Don't forget that it's only large animals like mammals and birds that have complex nervous systems. Simple animals like jellyfish don't — everything they do is a reflex response (see next page).

Q1 Name two types of effector. [2 marks]

Synapses and Reflexes

Neurones transmit information very quickly to and from the brain, and your brain quickly decides how to respond to a stimulus. But reflexes are even quicker...

Synapses Connect Neurones

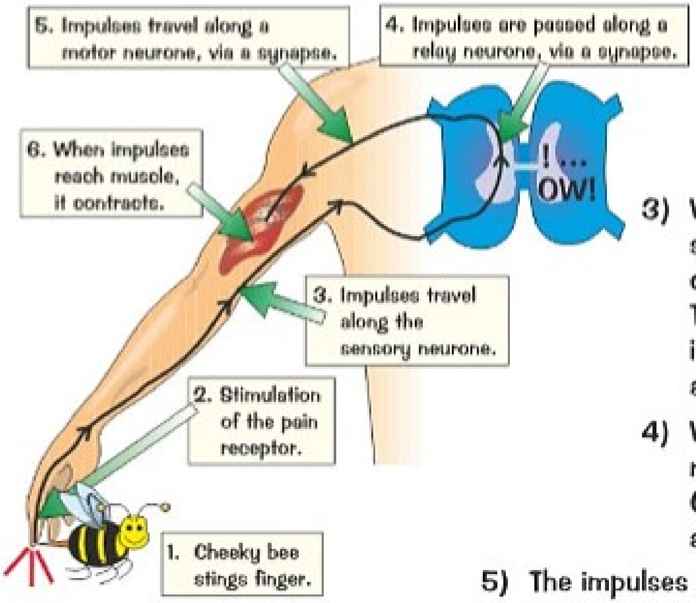

chemicals released
End of neurone
neurone
Nerve impulse

1) The connection between two neurones is called a synapse.
2) The nerve signal is transferred by chemicals which diffuse (move) across the gap.
3) These chemicals then set off a new electrical signal in the next neurone.

Reflexes Help Prevent Injury

1) Reflexes are rapid, automatic responses to certain stimuli that don't involve the conscious part of the brain — they can reduce the chances of being injured.
2) For example, if someone shines a bright light in your eyes, your pupils automatically get smaller so that less light gets into the eye — this stops it getting damaged.
3) Or if you get a shock, your body releases the hormone adrenaline automatically — it doesn't wait for you to decide that you're shocked.
4) The passage of information in a reflex (from receptor to effector) is called a reflex arc.

The Reflex Arc Goes Through the Central Nervous System


5. Impulses travel along a motor neurone, via a synapse.
4. Impulses are passed along a relay neurone, via a synapse.
6. When impulses reach muscle, it contracts.
!... OW!
3. Impulses travel along the sensory neurone.
2. Stimulation of the pain receptor.
1. Cheeky bee stings finger.

1) The neurones in reflex arcs go through the spinal cord or through an unconscious part of the brain.
2) When a stimulus (e.g. a painful bee sting) is detected by receptors, impulses are sent along a sensory neurone to a relay neurone in the CNS.
3) When the impulses reach a synapse between the sensory neurone and the relay neurone, they trigger chemicals to be released (see above). These chemicals cause impulses to be sent along the relay neurone.
4) When the impulses reach a synapse between the relay neurone and a motor neurone, the same thing happens. Chemicals are released and cause impulses to be sent along the motor neurone.
5) The impulses then travel along the motor neurone to the effector (which is usually a muscle, like in this example).
6) The muscle then contracts and moves your hand away from the bee.
7) Because you don't have to think about the response (which takes time) it's quicker than normal responses.

Relay neurones connect sensory neurones to motor neurones.

Don't get all twitchy — just learn it...

Reflexes bypass your conscious brain completely when a quick response is essential — your body just gets on with things. If you had to stop and think first, you'd end up a lot more sore (or worse).

Q1 What is a reflex action? [1 mark]

Q2 A chef touches a hot tray. A reflex reaction causes him to immediately move his hand away.
a) State the effector in this reflex reaction. [1 mark]
b) Describe the pathway of the reflex from stimulus to effector. [4 marks]

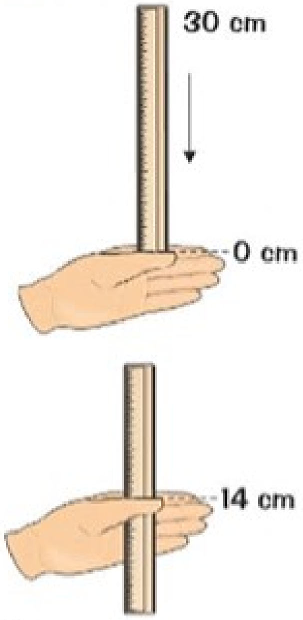
PRACTICAL Investigating Reaction Time

On your marks... get set... read this page.

Reaction Time is How Quickly You Respond

Reaction time is the time it takes to respond to a stimulus — it's often less than a second.
It can be affected by factors such as age, gender or drugs.

You Can Measure Reaction Time



Caffeine is a drug that can speed up a person's reaction time.
The effect of caffeine on reaction time can be measured like this...

1) The person being tested should sit with their arm resting on the edge of a table (this should stop them moving their arm up or down during the test).
2) Hold a ruler vertically between their thumb and forefinger. Make sure that the zero end of the ruler is level with their thumb and finger. Then let go without giving any warning.
3) The person being tested should try to catch the ruler as quickly as they can — as soon as they see it fall.
4) Reaction time is measured by the number on the ruler where it's caught. The number should be read from the top of the thumb. The further down the ruler it's caught (i.e. the higher the number), the slower their reaction time.
5) Repeat the test several times then calculate the mean distance that the ruler fell.
6) The person being tested should then have a caffeinated drink (e.g. 300 ml of cola). After ten minutes, repeat steps 1 to 5.
7) You need to control any variables to make sure that this is a fair test. For example, you should use the same person to catch the ruler each time, and that person should always use the same hand to catch the ruler. Also, the ruler should always be dropped from the same height, and you should make sure that the person being tested has not had any caffeine (or anything else that may affect their reaction time) before the start of the experiment.
8) Too much caffeine can cause unpleasant side-effects, so the person being tested should avoid drinking any more caffeine for the rest of the day after the experiment is completed.

With a little bit of maths, it's possible to work out the reaction time in seconds using the mean distance.

Reaction Time Can Be Measured Using a Computer

1) Simple computer tests can also be used to measure reaction time. For example, the person being tested has to click the mouse (or press a key) as soon as they see a stimulus on the screen, e.g. a box change colour.
2) Computers can give a more precise reaction time because they remove the possibility of human error from the measurement.
3) As the computer can record the reaction time in milliseconds, it can also give a more accurate measurement.
4) Using a computer can also remove the possibility that the person can predict when to respond — using the ruler test, the catcher may learn to anticipate the drop by reading the tester's body language.

Ready... Steady...

... Ah, too slow.

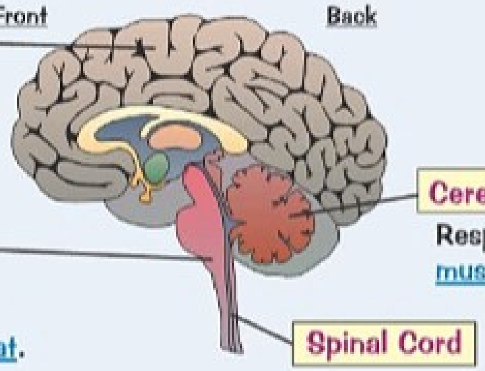
Q1 A student was measuring her reaction time using a computer test. She had to click the mouse when the screen changed from red to green. She repeated the test five times. Her results were as follows:
242 ms, 256 ms, 253 ms, 249 ms, 235 ms.
Calculate the mean reaction time of the student. [2 marks]

The Brain

Scientists know a bit about the brain but not as much as they'd like. Their knowledge is improving with the invention of new gadgetry that helps them study the brain. Read on, it's pretty amazing stuff.

The Brain is Responsible for Complex Behaviours

1) Along with the spinal cord, the brain is part of the central nervous system.
2) It's made up of billions of interconnected neurones (neurones that are connected together).
3) The brain is in charge of all of our complex behaviours. It controls and coordinates everything you do — running, breathing, sleeping, remembering your gym kit...
4) We know that different regions of the brain carry out different functions:



Cerebral cortex
This is the outer wrinkly bit. It's responsible for things like consciousness, intelligence, memory and language.

Medulla
Controls unconscious activities (things you don't have to think about doing) like breathing and your heartbeat.

Cerebellum
Responsible for muscle coordination.

Scientists Use a Range of Methods to Study the Brain

Scientists use a few different methods to study the brain and map out which bits do what:

Scientists that study the brain are called neuroscientists.

Studying patients with brain damage	If a small part of the brain has been damaged, the effect this has on the patient can tell you a lot about what the damaged part of the brain does. E.g. if an area at the back of the brain was damaged by a stroke and the patient went blind, you know that that area has something to do with vision.
Electrically stimulating the brain	The brain can be stimulated electrically by pushing a tiny electrode into the tissue and giving it a small zap of electricity. By observing what stimulating different parts of the brain does, it's possible to get an idea of what those parts do. E.g. when a certain part of the brain (known as the motor area) is stimulated, it causes muscle contraction and movement.
MRI Scans	A magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scanner is a big fancy tube-like machine that can produce a very detailed picture of the brain's structures. Scientists use it to find out what areas of the brain are active when people are doing things like listening to music or trying to recall a memory.

Messing With the Brain Can Have Consequences

1) Knowledge of how the brain works has led to the development of treatments for disorders of the nervous system. For example, electrical stimulation of the brain can help reduce muscle tremors caused by nervous system disorders such as Parkinson's disease.
2) However, the brain is incredibly complex and delicate — the investigation of brain function and any treatment of brain damage or disease is difficult. It also carries risks, such as physical damage to the brain or increased problems with brain function (e.g. difficulties with speech).

A whole page dedicated to that squidgy thing in your head...

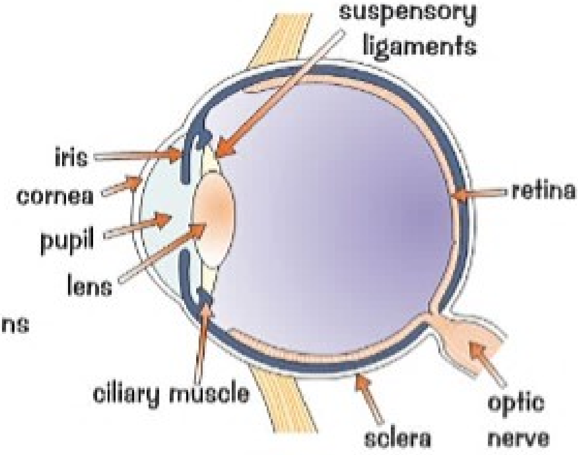
...lucky you. But actually it's really fascinating stuff. It'll make it that bit easier to learn...

Q1 Name the region of the brain that controls coordinated movement. [1 mark]

The Eye

The eye is a sense organ. There are several parts you need to learn about, so get focused.

Learn the Eye with All Its Labels

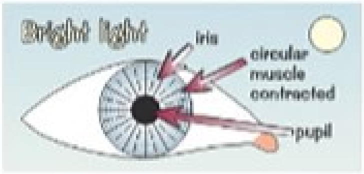

suspensory ligaments
iris
cornea
pupil
lens
retina
ciliary muscle
sclera
optic nerve

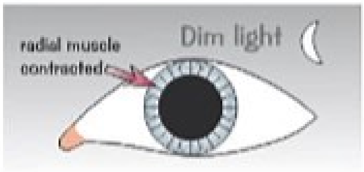
1) The **SCLERA** is the tough, supporting wall of the eye.
2) The **CORNEA** is the transparent outer layer found at the front of the eye. It refracts (bends) light into the eye.
3) The **IRIS** contains muscles that allow it to control the diameter of the **PUPIL** (the hole in the middle) and therefore how much light enters the eye.
4) The **LENS** focuses the light onto the **RETINA** (which contains receptor cells sensitive to light intensity and colour).
5) The shape of the lens is controlled by the **CILIARY MUSCLES** and **SUSPENSORY LIGAMENTS**.
6) The **OPTIC NERVE** carries impulses from the receptors on the retina to the brain.

The Iris Reflex — Adjusting for Bright Light

Very bright light can damage the retina — so you have a reflex to protect it.

1) When light receptors in the eye detect very bright light, a reflex is triggered that makes the pupil smaller. The circular muscles in the iris contract and the radial muscles relax. This reduces the amount of light that can enter the eye.
2) The opposite process happens in dim light. This time, the radial muscles contract and the circular muscles relax, which makes the pupil wider.

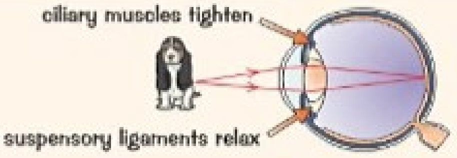

Bright light
iris
circular muscle contracted
pupil


radial muscle contracted
Dim light

Focusing on Near and Distant Objects — Another Reflex

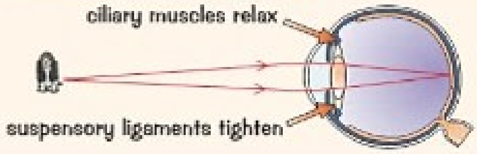
The eye focuses light on the retina by changing the shape of the lens — this is known as accommodation.

To look at near objects:


ciliary muscles tighten
suspensory ligaments relax

1) The ciliary muscles contract, which slackens the suspensory ligaments.
2) The lens becomes fat (more curved).
3) This increases the amount by which it refracts light.

To look at distant objects:


ciliary muscles relax
suspensory ligaments tighten

1) The ciliary muscles relax, which allows the suspensory ligaments to pull tight.
2) This makes the lens go thin (less curved).
3) So it refracts light by a smaller amount.

As you get older, your eye's lens loses flexibility, so it can't easily spring back to a round shape. This means light can't be focused well for near viewing, so older people often have to use reading glasses.

If the lens cannot refract the light by the right amount (so that it focuses on the retina), the person will be short- or long-sighted — see the next page for more.

Eye eye, Captain...

It doesn't matter how good you are at blagging in the exam — you need to learn those diagrams of the eye.

Q1 What name is given to the transparent layer at the front of the eye? [1 mark]

Q2 Explain how the eye focuses on an object that's close to it. [4 marks]

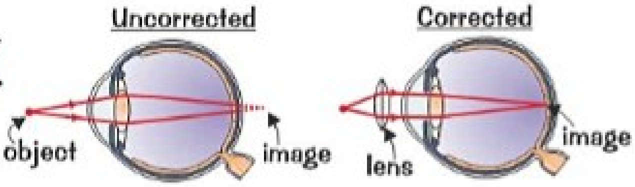
Correcting Vision Defects

As you can see on the previous page, the way the eye works is quite complex. It's not surprising really that sometimes it doesn't work so well. Thankfully, we have ways of correcting it...

Some People are Long- or Short-Sighted

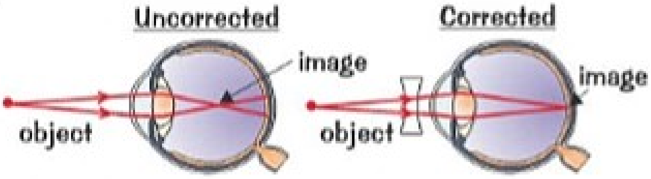
Long-sighted people are unable to focus on near objects:

1) This occurs when the lens is the wrong shape and doesn't refract (bend) the light enough or the eyeball is too short.
2) The images of near objects are brought into focus behind the retina.
3) You can use glasses with a convex lens (a lens which curves outwards) to correct it. The lens refracts the light rays so they focus on the retina.
4) The medical term for long-sightedness is hyperopia.



Short-sighted people are unable to focus on distant objects:

1) This occurs when the lens is the wrong shape and refracts the light too much or the eyeball is too long.
2) The images of distant objects are brought into focus in front of the retina.
3) You can use glasses with a concave lens (a lens which curves inwards) to correct it, so that the light rays focus on the retina.
4) The medical term for short-sightedness is myopia.



There are Several Treatments for Vision Defects

Wearing glasses isn't for everyone. You need to know about these alternatives:

CONTACT LENSES: Contact lenses are thin lenses that sit on the surface of the eye and are shaped to compensate for the fault in focusing. They're popular because they are lightweight and almost invisible. They're also more convenient than glasses for activities like sports. The two main types of contact lenses are hard lenses and soft lenses. Soft lenses are generally more comfortable, but carry a higher risk of eye infections than hard lenses.

LASER EYE SURGERY: Bad eyesight can sometimes be corrected with laser eye surgery. A laser can be used to vaporise tissue, changing the shape of the cornea (and so changing how strongly it refracts light into the eye). Slimming it down makes it less powerful and can improve short sight. Changing the shape so that it's more powerful will improve long sight. The surgeon can precisely control how much tissue the laser takes off, completely correcting the vision. However, like all surgical procedures, there is a risk of complications, such as infection or the eye reacting in a way that makes your vision worse than before.

REPLACEMENT LENS SURGERY: Sometimes long-sightedness may be more effectively treated by replacing the lens of the eye (rather than altering the shape of the cornea with laser eye surgery). In replacement lens surgery, the natural lens of the eye is removed and an artificial lens, made of clear plastic, is inserted in its place. As it involves work inside the eye, replacing a lens carries higher risks than laser eye surgery, including possible damage to the retina (which could lead to loss of sight).

I think I'm a little long-sighted...

If you can read this you've got better eyesight than me!

You won't have to draw those diagrams for different lenses in the exam, but you may have to interpret them, so it's probably for the best that you make sure you totally understand what's going on in each one.

Q1 Explain the cause of short-sightedness. [2 marks]

Q2 How can glasses help a long-sighted person focus on something nearby? [1 mark]

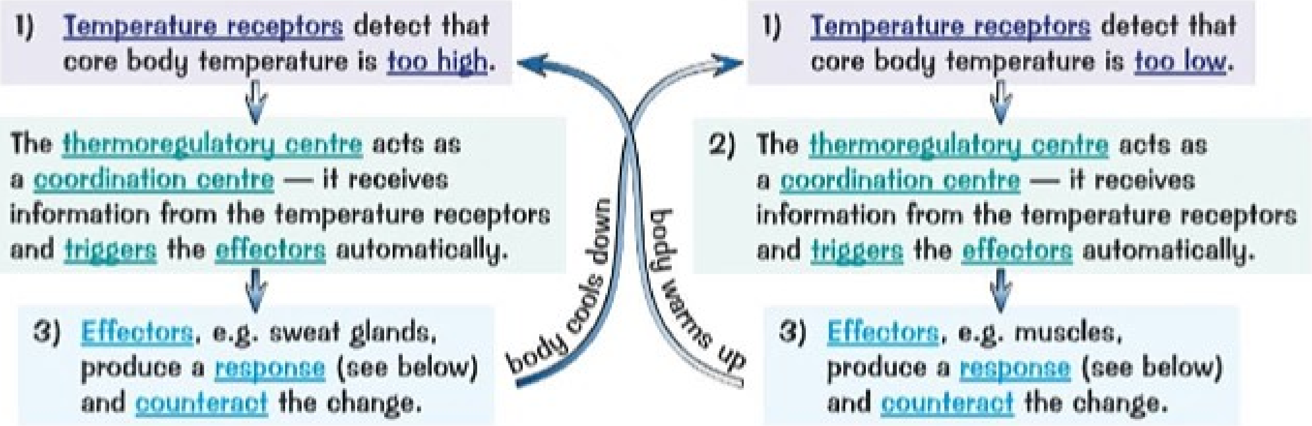
Controlling Body Temperature

The body has to keep its insides at around 37 °C — the optimum temperature for enzymes in the body.

Body Temperature Must be Kept Constant

Core body temperature is the temperature inside your body, where your internal organs are.

1) The body has to balance the amount of energy gained (e.g. through respiration) and lost to keep the core body temperature constant.
2) There is a thermoregulatory centre in the brain, which contains receptors that are sensitive to the temperature of the blood flowing through the brain.
3) The thermoregulatory centre also receives impulses from temperature receptors in the skin, giving information about skin temperature.



1) Temperature receptors detect that core body temperature is too high.
2) The thermoregulatory centre acts as a coordination centre — it receives information from the temperature receptors and triggers the effectors automatically.
3) Effectors, e.g. sweat glands, produce a response (see below) and counteract the change.

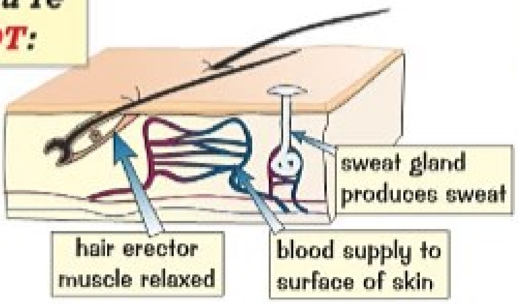
1) Temperature receptors detect that core body temperature is too low.
2) The thermoregulatory centre acts as a coordination centre — it receives information from the temperature receptors and triggers the effectors automatically.
3) Effectors, e.g. muscles, produce a response (see below) and counteract the change.

Some effectors work antagonistically, e.g. one effector heats and another cools — they'll work at the same time to achieve a very precise temperature. This mechanism allows a more sensitive response.

The Body has Some Nifty Tricks for Altering its Temperature

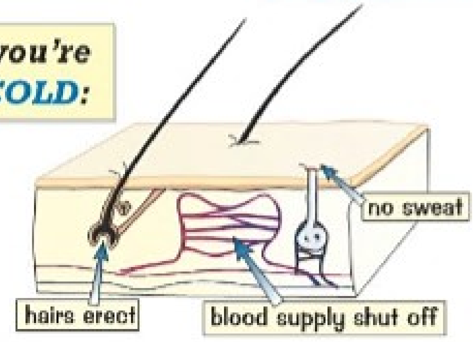
Different responses are produced by effectors to counteract an increase or decrease in body temperature.

When you're TOO HOT:


sweat gland produces sweat
hair erector muscle relaxed
blood supply to surface of skin

1) Sweat is produced by sweat glands and evaporates from the skin. This transfers energy to the environment.
2) The blood vessels supplying the skin dilate so more blood flows close to the surface of the skin. This is called vasodilation. This helps transfer energy from the skin to the environment.

When you're TOO COLD:



1) Hairs stand up to trap an insulating layer of air.
2) No sweat is produced.
3) Blood vessels supplying skin capillaries constrict to close off the skin's blood supply. This is called vasoconstriction.
4) When you're cold you shiver too (your muscles contract automatically). This needs respiration, which transfers some energy to warm the body.

Shiver me timbers — it's a wee bit nippy in here...

People who are exposed to extreme cold for a long time without protection can get frostbite — the blood supply to the fingers and toes is cut off to reduce the amount of energy lost (but this kills the cells, and they go black)... yuk.

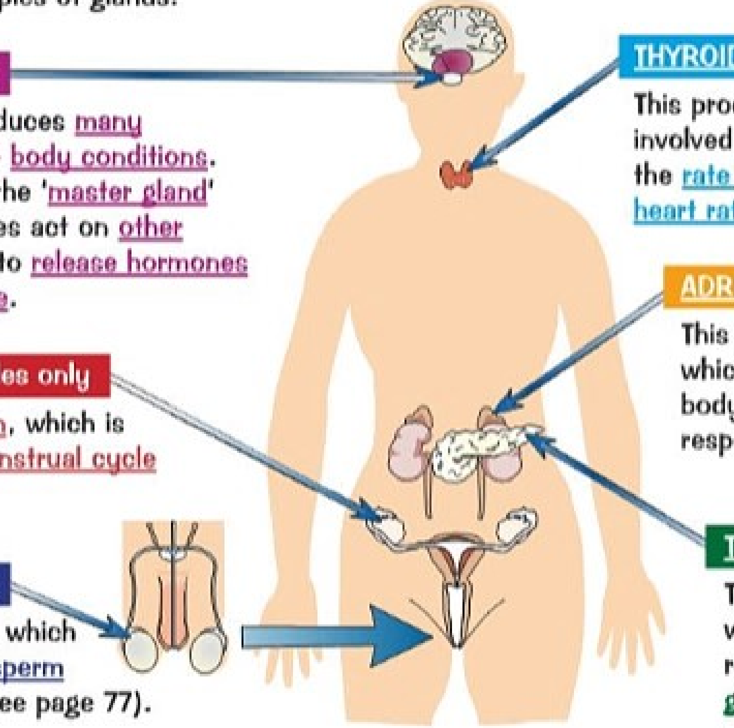
Q1 Name the area of the brain that controls body temperature. [1 mark]

The Endocrine System

The other way to send information around the body (apart from along nerves) is by using hormones.

Hormones Are Chemical Messengers Sent in the Blood

1) Hormones are chemical molecules released directly into the blood. They are carried in the blood to other parts of the body, but only affect particular cells in particular organs (called target organs). Hormones control things in organs and cells that need constant adjustment.
2) Hormones are produced in (and secreted by) various glands, called endocrine glands. These glands make up your endocrine system.
3) Hormones tend to have relatively long-lasting effects.
4) Here are some examples of glands:



THE PITUITARY GLAND

The pituitary gland produces many hormones that regulate body conditions. It is sometimes called the 'master gland' because these hormones act on other glands, directing them to release hormones that bring about change.

OVARIES — females only

Produce oestrogen, which is involved in the menstrual cycle (see page 77).

TESTES — males only

Produce testosterone, which controls puberty and sperm production in males (see page 77).

THYROID

This produces thyroxine, which is involved in regulating things like the rate of metabolism, heart rate and temperature.

ADRENAL GLAND

This produces adrenaline, which is used to prepare the body for a 'fight or flight' response (see page 80).

THE PANCREAS

This produces insulin, which is used to regulate the blood glucose level (see next page).

Hormones and Nerves Have Differences

NERVES:	**HORMONES:**
Very FAST action.	SLOWER action.
Act for a very SHORT TIME.	Act for a LONG TIME.
Act on a very PRECISE AREA.	Act in a more GENERAL way.

So if you're not sure whether a response is nervous or hormonal, have a think...

1) If the response is really quick, it's probably nervous. Some information needs to be passed to effectors really quickly (e.g. pain signals, or information from your eyes telling you about the lion heading your way), so it's no good using hormones to carry the message — they're too slow.
2) But if a response lasts for a long time, it's probably hormonal. For example, when you get a shock, a hormone called adrenaline is released into the body (causing the fight or flight response, where your body is hyped up ready for action). You can tell it's a hormonal response (even though it kicks in pretty quickly) because you feel a bit wobbly for a while afterwards.

Nerves, hormones — no wonder revision makes me tense...

Hormones control various organs and cells in the body, though they tend to control things that aren't immediately life-threatening (so things like sexual development, blood sugar level, water content, etc.).

Q1 Why is the pituitary gland referred to as the 'master gland'? [1 mark]

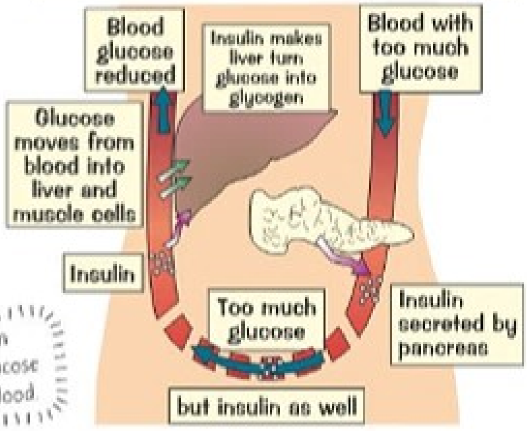
Controlling Blood Glucose

Blood glucose is also controlled as part of homeostasis. Insulin and glucagon are the two hormones involved.

Insulin and Glucagon Control Blood Glucose Level

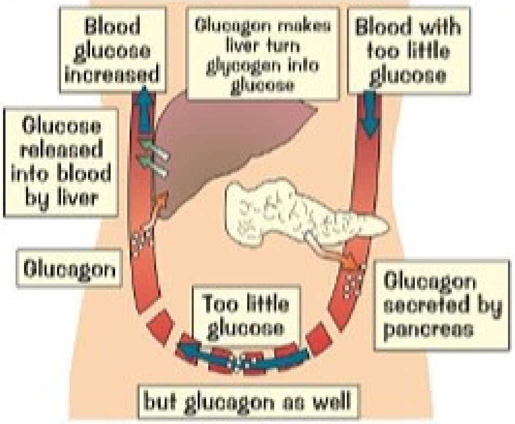
1) Eating foods containing carbohydrate puts glucose (a type of sugar) into the blood from the gut.
2) The normal metabolism of cells removes glucose from the blood.
3) Vigorous exercise removes much more glucose from the blood.
4) Excess glucose can be stored as glycogen in the liver and in the muscles.
5) The level of glucose in the blood must be kept steady. Changes are monitored and controlled by the pancreas, using the hormones insulin and glucagon, in a negative feedback cycle:

Blood glucose level TOO HIGH — INSULIN is ADDED


Blood glucose reduced
Insulin makes liver turn glucose into glycogen
Blood with too much glucose
Glucose moves from blood into liver and muscle cells
Insulin
Too much glucose
Insulin secreted by pancreas
but insulin as well

So insulin removes glucose from the blood.

Blood glucose level TOO LOW — GLUCAGON is ADDED


Blood glucose increased
Glucagon makes liver turn glycogen into glucose
Blood with too little glucose
Glucose released into blood by liver
Glucagon
Too little glucose
Glucagon secreted by pancreas
but glucagon as well

With Diabetes, You Can't Control Your Blood Sugar Level

Diabetes is a condition that affects your ability to control your blood sugar level. There are two types:

1) Type 1 diabetes is where the pancreas produces little or no insulin. This means a person's blood glucose level can rise to a level that can kill them. People with Type 1 diabetes need insulin therapy — this usually involves several injections of insulin throughout the day, most likely at mealtimes. This makes sure that glucose is removed from the blood quickly once the food has been digested, stopping the level getting too high. It's a very effective treatment. The amount of insulin that needs to be injected depends on the person's diet and how active they are. As well as insulin therapy, people with Type 1 diabetes need to think about limiting the intake of food rich in simple carbohydrates, e.g. sugars (which cause the blood glucose to rise rapidly) and taking regular exercise (which helps to remove excess glucose from the blood).
2) Type 2 diabetes is where a person becomes resistant to their own insulin (they still produce insulin, but their body's cells don't respond properly to the hormone). This can also cause a person's blood sugar level to rise to a dangerous level. Being overweight can increase your chance of developing Type 2 diabetes, as obesity is a major risk factor in the development of the disease. Type 2 diabetes can be controlled by eating a carbohydrate-controlled diet and getting regular exercise.

And people used to think the pancreas was just a cushion... (true)

This stuff can seem a bit confusing at first, but if you learn those two diagrams, it should get a bit easier. In the exam, you might be given a graph showing the effect of insulin on blood glucose level and be asked to interpret the data — if you do, just use what you know about reading graphs. Easy really.

Q1 Describe how the blood glucose level is returned to normal when it is too high. [3 marks]

The Kidneys

The kidneys are really important in this whole homeostasis thing.

Kidneys Basically Act as Filters to "Clean the Blood"

The kidneys make urine by taking waste products (and other unwanted substances) out of your blood. Substances are filtered out of the blood as it passes through the kidneys. This process is called filtration. Useful substances like glucose, some ions and the right amount of water are then absorbed back into the blood. This process is called selective reabsorption. The substances that are removed from the body in urine include:

❶ UREA

1) Proteins (and the amino acids that they are broken down into) can't be stored by the body — so any excess amino acids are converted into fats and carbohydrates, which can be stored. This occurs in the liver and involves a process called deamination.
2) Ammonia is produced as a waste product from this process.
3) Ammonia is toxic so it's converted to urea in the liver. Urea is then transported to the kidneys, where it's filtered out of the blood and excreted from the body in urine.

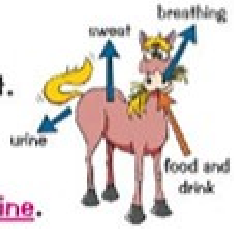
A small, unregulated amount of urea is also lost from the skin in sweat.

❷ IONS

1) Ions such as sodium are taken into the body in food, and then absorbed into the blood.
2) If the ion (or water) content of the body is wrong, this could upset the balance between ions and water, meaning too much or too little water is drawn into cells by osmosis (see page 21). Having the wrong amount of water can damage cells or mean they don't work as well as normal.
3) Some ions are lost in sweat (which tastes salty, you may have noticed). However, this amount is not regulated, so the right balance of ions in the body must be maintained by the kidneys. The right amount of ions is reabsorbed into the blood after filtration and the rest is removed from the body in urine.

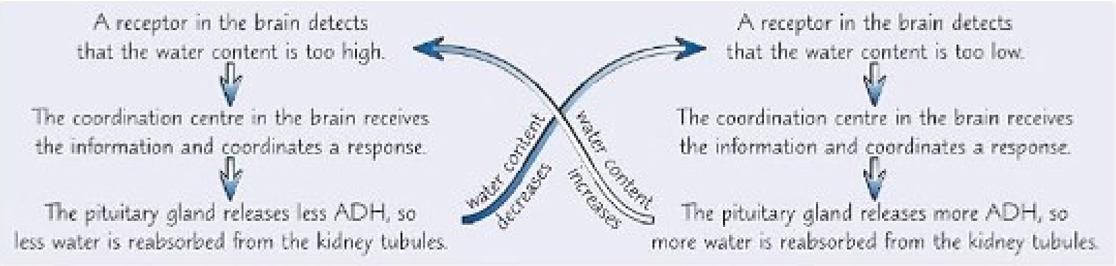
❸ WATER

1) The body has to constantly balance the water coming in against the water going out.
2) We lose water from the skin in sweat and from the lungs when breathing out.
3) We can't control how much we lose in these ways, so the amount of water is balanced by the amount we consume and the amount removed by the kidneys in urine.



The Concentration of Urine is Controlled by a Hormone

1) The concentration of urine is controlled by a hormone called anti-diuretic hormone (ADH). This is released into the bloodstream by the pituitary gland.
2) The brain monitors the water content of the blood and instructs the pituitary gland to release ADH into the blood according to how much is needed.
3) The whole process of water content regulation is controlled by negative feedback (see page 65). This means that if the water content gets too high or too low a mechanism will be triggered that brings it back to normal.



A receptor in the brain detects that the water content is too high.

The coordination centre in the brain receives the information and coordinates a response.

The pituitary gland releases less ADH, so less water is reabsorbed from the kidney tubules.

A receptor in the brain detects that the water content is too low.

The coordination centre in the brain receives the information and coordinates a response.

The pituitary gland releases more ADH, so more water is reabsorbed from the kidney tubules.

Adjusting water content — blood, sweat and, erm, wee...

The kidneys excrete about 547.5 litres of urine a year... that's five baths full. (Not that you should put it there.)

Q1 Alcohol suppresses the production of ADH. Suggest how this can lead to dehydration. [2 marks]

Kidney Failure

If someone's kidneys stop working, there are basically two treatments — regular dialysis or a transplant.

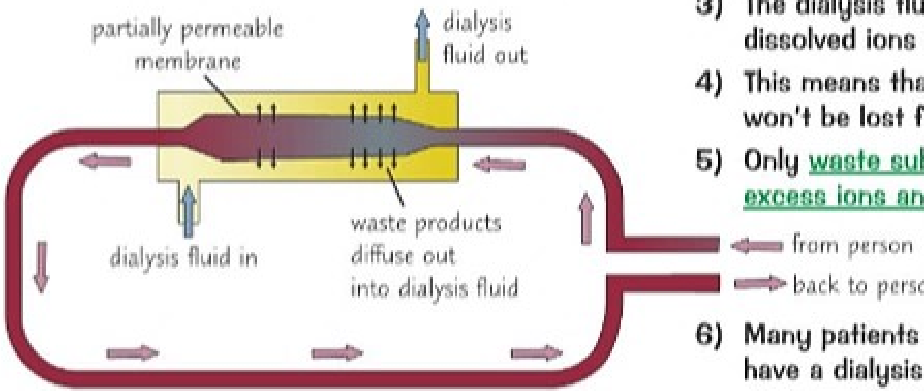
The Kidneys Remove Waste Substances from the Blood

1) If the kidneys don't work properly, waste substances build up in the blood and you lose your ability to control the levels of ions and water in your body. Eventually, this results in death.
2) People with kidney failure can be kept alive by having dialysis treatment — where machines do the job of the kidneys. Or they can have a kidney transplant.

The kidneys are incredibly important — if they don't work as they should, you can get problems in the heart, bones, nervous system, stomach, mouth, etc.

Dialysis Machines Filter the Blood

1) Dialysis has to be done regularly to keep the concentrations of dissolved substances in the blood at normal levels, and to remove waste substances.
2) In a dialysis machine the person's blood flows between partially permeable membranes, surrounded by dialysis fluid. It's permeable to things like ions and waste substances, but not big molecules like proteins (just like the membranes in the kidney).


partially permeable membrane
dialysis fluid out
dialysis fluid in
waste products diffuse out into dialysis fluid
from person
back to person

3) The dialysis fluid has the same concentration of dissolved ions and glucose as healthy blood.
4) This means that useful dissolved ions and glucose won't be lost from the blood during dialysis.
5) Only waste substances (such as urea) and excess ions and water diffuse across the barrier.
6) Many patients with kidney failure have to have a dialysis session three times a week. Each session takes 3-4 hours — not much fun.
7) Plus, dialysis may cause blood clots or infections.
8) Being on a dialysis machine is not a pleasant experience and it is expensive for the NHS to run.
9) However, dialysis can buy a patient with kidney failure valuable time until a donor organ is found.

Kidney Transplants are a Cure, but can be Rejected

1) At the moment, the only cure for kidney failure is to have a kidney transplant.
2) Healthy kidneys are usually transplanted from people who have died suddenly.
3) The person who died has to be on the organ donor register or carry a donor card (provided their relatives agree too).
4) Kidneys can also be transplanted from people who are still alive (as we all have two of them) but there is a small risk to the person donating the kidney.
5) There is also a risk that the donor kidney can be rejected by the patient's immune system. The patient is treated with drugs to prevent this but it can still happen.
6) Transplants are cheaper (in the long run) than dialysis and they can put an end to the hours patients have to spend on dialysis, but there are long waiting lists for kidneys.

Dialysis or transplant? Both have their downsides...

Donor kidneys are ideally matched by blood type (and a few other things) to the recipient, which make them less likely to be rejected. However, it means a potentially long waiting time for a suitable kidney.

Q1 What is the purpose of the partially permeable membrane in a dialysis machine? [2 marks]

Puberty and the Menstrual Cycle

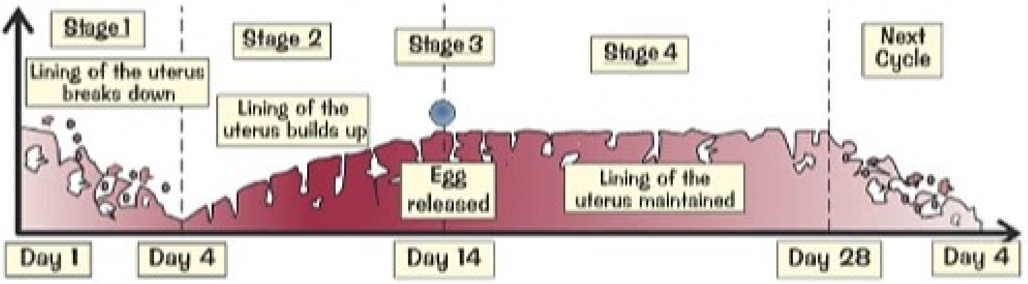
The monthly release of an egg from a woman's ovaries is part of the menstrual cycle.

Hormones Promote Sexual Characteristics at Puberty

At puberty, your body starts releasing sex hormones that trigger off secondary sexual characteristics (such as the development of facial hair in men and breasts in women) and cause eggs to mature in women.

- In men, the main reproductive hormone is testosterone. It's produced by the testes and stimulates sperm production.
- In women, the main reproductive hormone is oestrogen. It's produced by the ovaries. As well as bringing about physical changes, oestrogen is also involved in the menstrual cycle.

The Menstrual Cycle Has Four Stages


Stage 1
Lining of the uterus breaks down
Stage 2
Lining of the uterus builds up
Stage 3
Egg released
Stage 4
Lining of the uterus maintained
Next Cycle
Day 1
Day 4
Day 14
Day 28
Day 4

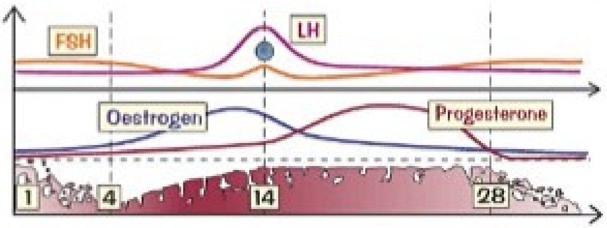
Stage 1 Day 1 — menstruation starts. The uterus lining breaks down for about four days.

Stage 2 The uterus lining builds up again, from day 4 to day 14, into a thick spongy layer full of blood vessels, ready to receive a fertilised egg.

Stage 3 An egg develops and is released from the ovary at day 14 — this is called ovulation.

Stage 4 The wall is then maintained for about 14 days until day 28. If no fertilised egg has landed on the uterus wall by day 28, the spongy lining starts to break down and the whole cycle starts again.

It's Controlled by Four Hormones



① FSH (Follicle-Stimulating Hormone)

1) Produced in the pituitary gland.
2) Causes an egg to mature in one of the ovaries, in a structure called a follicle.
3) Stimulates the ovaries to produce oestrogen.

② Oestrogen

1) Produced in the ovaries.
2) Causes the lining of the uterus to grow.
3) Stimulates the release of LH (which causes the release of an egg) and inhibits release of FSH.

③ LH (Luteinising Hormone)

1) Produced by the pituitary gland.
2) Stimulates the release of an egg at day 14 (ovulation).

④ Progesterone

1) Produced in the ovaries by the remains of the follicle after ovulation.
2) Maintains the lining of the uterus during the second half of the cycle. When the level of progesterone falls, the lining breaks down.
3) Inhibits the release of LH and FSH.

Which came first — the chicken or the luteinising hormone...

Female or not, learn this page... till you know what hormone does what and understand that there graph.

Q1 Name the hormone that stimulates an egg to mature in the ovary. [1 mark]

Q2 Where is testosterone produced in the male body? [1 mark]

Controlling Fertility

Pregnancy can happen if sperm reaches the ovulated egg. Contraception tries to stop this happening.

Hormones Can Be Used to Reduce Fertility

1) Oestrogen can be used to prevent the release of an egg — so it can be used as a method of contraception.
2) This may seem kind of strange (since naturally oestrogen helps stimulate the release of eggs). But if oestrogen is taken every day to keep the level of it permanently high, it inhibits the production of FSH, and after a while egg development and production stop and stay stopped.
3) Progesterone also reduces fertility, e.g. by stimulating the production of thick mucus which prevents any sperm getting through and reaching an egg.
4) The pill is an oral contraceptive containing oestrogen and progesterone (known as the combined oral contraceptive pill).
5) It's over 99% effective at preventing pregnancy, but it can cause side effects like headaches and nausea and it doesn't protect against sexually transmitted diseases.
6) There's also a progesterone-only pill — it has fewer side effects than the pill, and is just as effective.
7) There are other methods of contraception that use hormones:

- The contraceptive patch contains oestrogen and progesterone (the same as the combined pill). It's a small (5 cm × 5 cm) patch that's stuck to the skin. Each patch lasts one week.
- The contraceptive implant is inserted under the skin of the arm. It releases a continuous amount of progesterone, which stops the ovaries releasing eggs, makes it hard for sperm to swim to the egg, and stops any fertilised egg implanting in the uterus. An implant can last for three years.
- The contraceptive injection also contains progesterone. Each dose lasts 2 to 3 months.
- An intrauterine device (IUD) is a T-shaped device that is inserted into the uterus to kill sperm and prevent implantation of a fertilised egg. There are two main types — plastic IUDs that release progesterone and copper IUDs that prevent the sperm surviving in the uterus.

Barriers Stop Egg and Sperm Meeting

1) Non-hormonal forms of contraception are designed to stop the sperm from getting to the egg.
2) Condoms are worn over the penis during intercourse to prevent the sperm entering the vagina. There are also female condoms that are worn inside the vagina. Condoms are the only form of contraception that will protect against sexually transmitted diseases.
3) A diaphragm is a shallow plastic cup that fits over the cervix (the entrance to the uterus) to form a barrier. It has to be used with spermicide (a substance that disables or kills the sperm).
4) Spermicide can be used alone as a form of contraception, but it is not as effective (only about 70-80%).

There are More Drastic Ways to Avoid Pregnancy

STERILISATION — Sterilisation involves cutting or tying the fallopian tubes (which connect the ovaries to the uterus) in a female, or the sperm duct (the tube between the testes and penis) in a male. This is a permanent procedure. However, there is a very small chance that the tubes can rejoin.

'NATURAL' METHODS — Pregnancy may be avoided by finding out when in the menstrual cycle the woman is most fertile and avoiding sexual intercourse on those days. It's popular with people who think that hormonal and barrier methods are unnatural, but it's not very effective.

ABSTINENCE — The only way to be completely sure that sperm and egg don't meet is to not have intercourse.

The winner of best contraceptive ever — just not doing it...

You might be asked to evaluate the different hormonal and non-hormonal methods of contraception in your exam. If you do, make sure you weigh up and write about both the pros and the cons of each method. Exciting stuff.

Q1 Name two forms of contraception that reduce fertility by releasing oestrogen. [2 marks]

More on Controlling Fertility

Scientific advances in understanding fertility have led to many infertile women being helped to have babies.

Hormones Can Be Used to Increase Fertility

1) Some women have levels of FSH (follicle-stimulating hormone) that are too low to cause their eggs to mature. This means that no eggs are released and the women can't get pregnant.
2) The hormones FSH and LH can be given to women in a fertility drug to stimulate ovulation.

PROS It helps a lot of women to get pregnant when previously they couldn't... pretty obvious.

CONS It doesn't always work — some women may have to do it many times, which can be expensive.

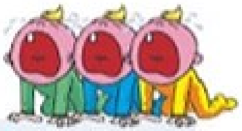
Too many eggs could be stimulated, resulting in unexpected multiple pregnancies (twins, triplets, etc.).

IVF Can Also Help Couples to Have Children

If a woman cannot get pregnant using medication, she may chose to try IVF ("*in vitro* fertilisation").

1) IVF involves collecting eggs from the woman's ovaries and fertilising them in a lab using the man's sperm.
2) IVF treatment can also involve a technique called Intra-Cytoplasmic Sperm Injection (ICSI), where the sperm is injected directly into an egg. It's useful if the man has a very low sperm count.
3) The fertilised eggs are then grown into embryos in a laboratory incubator.
4) Once the embryos are tiny balls of cells, one or two of them are transferred to the woman's uterus to improve the chance of pregnancy.
5) FSH and LH are given before egg collection to stimulate several eggs to mature (so more than one egg can be collected).

PRO Fertility treatment can give an infertile couple a child — a pretty obvious benefit.



CONS Multiple births can happen if more than one embryo grows into a baby — these are risky for the mother and babies (there's a higher risk of miscarriage, stillbirth...).

The success rate of IVF is low — the average success rate in the UK is about 26%. This makes the process incredibly stressful and often upsetting, especially if it ends in multiple failures.

As well as being emotionally stressful, the process is also physically stressful for the woman. Some women have a strong reaction to the hormones — e.g. abdominal pain, vomiting, dehydration.

Advances in microscope techniques have helped to improve the techniques (and therefore the success rate) of IVF. Specialised micro-tools have been developed to use on the eggs and sperm under the microscope. They're also used to remove single cells from the embryo for genetic testing (to check that it is healthy — see page 93). More recently, the development of time-lapse imaging (using a microscope and camera built into the incubator) means that the growth of the embryos can be continuously monitored to help identify those that are more likely to result in a successful pregnancy.

Some People Are Against IVF

1) The process of IVF often results in unused embryos that are eventually destroyed. Because of this, some people think it is unethical because each embryo is a potential human life.
2) The genetic testing of embryos before implantation also raises ethical issues as some people think it could lead to the selection of preferred characteristics, such as gender or eye colour.

Nothing funny here, sorry...

Fertility treatment can help to increase the chance of pregnancy, but it can be hard on those involved.

Q1 What is the role of FSH and LH during IVF? [1 mark]

Q2 Give one drawback to using hormones to increase fertility. [1 mark]

Adrenaline and Thyroxine

You've met a lot of human hormones so far, but two more won't hurt. Then that's it, I promise...

Adrenaline Prepares You for "Fight or Flight"

1) Adrenaline is a hormone released by the adrenal glands, which are just above the kidneys (see p.73).
2) Adrenaline is released in response to stressful or scary situations — your brain detects fear or stress and sends nervous impulses to the adrenal glands, which respond by secreting adrenaline.
3) It gets the body ready for 'fight or flight' by triggering mechanisms that increase the supply of oxygen and glucose to cells in the brain and muscles. For example, adrenaline increases heart rate.

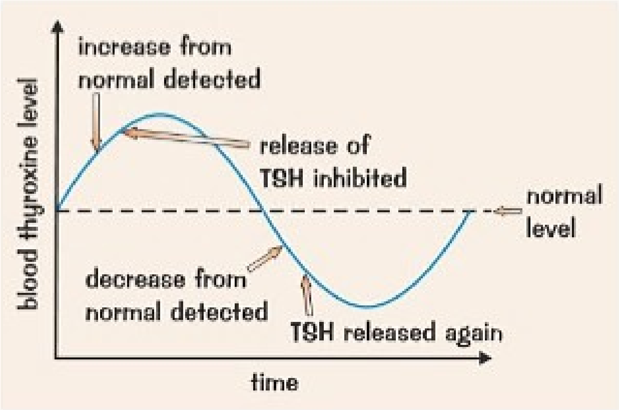
Hormone Release can be Affected by Negative Feedback

Your body can control the levels of hormones (and other substances) in the blood using negative feedback systems. When the body detects that the level of a substance has gone above or below the normal level, it triggers a response to bring the level back to normal again. Here's an example of just that:

Thyroxine Regulates Metabolism

Thyroxine is made in the thyroid gland from iodine and amino acids.

1) Thyroxine is a hormone released by the thyroid gland, which is in the neck (see p.73).
2) It plays an important role in regulating the basal metabolic rate — the speed at which chemical reactions in the body occur while the body is at rest. Thyroxine is also important for loads of processes in the body, such as stimulating protein synthesis for growth and development.
3) Thyroxine is released in response to thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH), which is released from the pituitary gland.
4) A negative feedback system keeps the amount of thyroxine in the blood at the right level — when the level of thyroxine in the blood is higher than normal, the secretion of TSH from the pituitary gland is inhibited (stopped). This reduces the amount of thyroxine released from the thyroid gland, so the level in the blood falls back towards normal.



Negative feedback sucks, especially from your science teacher...

You can think about negative feedback working like a thermostat — if the temperature gets too low, the thermostat will turn the heating on, then if the temperature gets too high, it'll turn the heating off again.

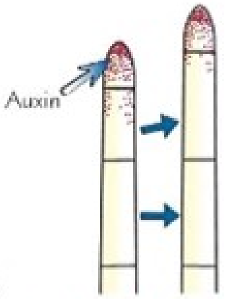
Q1 Name the gland that releases thyroxine. [1 mark]

Q2 Describe the response if the level of thyroxine in the blood gets too high. [3 marks]

Plant Hormones

Plants don't just grow randomly. Plant hormones make sure they grow in the right direction.

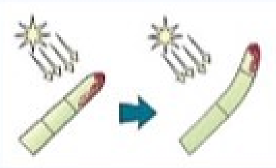
Auxin is a Plant Growth Hormone



1) Auxin is a plant hormone that controls growth near the tips of shoots and roots.
2) It controls the growth of a plant in response to light (phototropism) and gravity (gravitropism or geotropism).
3) Auxin is produced in the tips and moves backwards to stimulate the cell elongation (enlargement) process which occurs in the cells just behind the tips.
4) If the tip of a shoot is removed, no auxin is available and the shoot may stop growing.
5) Extra auxin promotes growth in the shoot but inhibits growth in the root — producing the desired result...

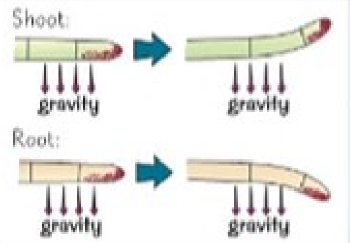
Shoots grow towards light

1) When a shoot tip is exposed to light, more auxin accumulates on the side that's in the shade than the side that's in the light.
2) This makes the cells grow (elongate) faster on the shaded side, so the shoot bends towards the light.



Shoots grow away from gravity and roots grow towards gravity

1) When a shoot is growing sideways, gravity produces an unequal distribution of auxin in the tip, with more auxin on the lower side.
2) This causes the lower side to grow faster, bending the shoot upwards.
3) A root growing sideways will also have more auxin on its lower side.
4) But in a root the extra auxin inhibits growth. This means the cells on top elongate faster, and the root bends downwards.

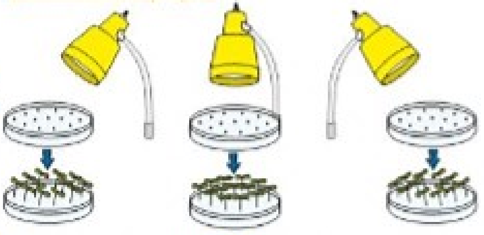


You can Investigate Plant Growth Responses

PRACTICAL

You can investigate the effect of light on the growth of cress seeds like this...

1) Put 10 cress seeds into three different Petri dishes, each lined with moist filter paper. (Remember to label your dishes, e.g. A, B, C.)
2) Shine a light onto one of the dishes from above and two of the dishes from different directions.
3) Leave your poor little cress seeds alone for one week until you can observe their responses — and hey presto, you'll find the seedlings grow towards the light.
4) You know that the growth response of the cress seeds is due to light only, if you control all other variables. Examples of variables to control are:



VARIABLE	HOW TO CONTROL IT
number of seeds	use the same number of seeds in each dish
type of seed	use seeds that all come from the same packet
temperature	keep your Petri dishes in a place where the temperature is stable (i.e. away from heat sources and draughts)
water	use a measuring cylinder to add the same amount of water
light intensity	keep the distance between the bulb and dish the same

You can also investigate the effect of gravity on plant growth. Just place four seedlings on damp cotton wool in a Petri dish, each with their roots pointing in a different direction, and store the Petri dish vertically for a few days in the dark. You should find that the roots of each seedling grow downwards.

A plant auxin to a bar — 'ouch'...

You need to be able to draw labelled diagrams to show the results of your experiment. Make sure you do it neatly.

Q1 Explain what causes plant shoots to grow towards light. [2 marks]

Commercial Uses of Plant Hormones

Plant hormones can be extracted, or artificial copies can be made. They can then be used to do all kinds of useful things, including killing weeds, growing cuttings and ripening fruit.

Auxins Have Many *Uses*

Auxins are useful for controlling plant growth. Here are some of the ways they come in handy:

1) **KILLING WEEDS** — Most weeds growing in fields of crops or in a lawn are broad-leaved, in contrast to grasses and cereals which have very narrow leaves. Selective weedkillers have been developed using auxins, which only affect the broad-leaved plants. They totally disrupt their normal growth patterns, which soon kills them, whilst leaving the grass and crops untouched.

Unhappy weeds

2) **GROWING FROM CUTTINGS WITH ROOTING POWDER** — A cutting is part of a plant that has been cut off it, like the end of a branch with a few leaves on it. Normally, if you stick cuttings in the soil they won't grow, but if you add rooting powder, which contains auxins, they will produce roots rapidly and start growing as new plants. This enables growers to produce lots of clones (exact copies) of a really good plant very quickly.
3) **GROWING CELLS IN TISSUE CULTURE** — Tissue culture can be used to grow clones of a plant from a few of its cells. To do this, hormones such as auxins need to be added to the growth medium (along with nutrients) to stimulate the cells to divide to form both roots and shoots.

Gibberellin Stimulates *Plant Stems* to Grow

Seed germination is when a seed starts to grow into a plant.

Gibberellin is another type of plant growth hormone. It stimulates seed germination, stem growth and flowering. Its uses include:

1) **CONTROLLING DORMANCY** — Lots of seeds won't germinate until they've been through certain conditions (e.g. a period of cold or of dryness). This is called dormancy. Seeds can be treated with gibberellin to alter dormancy and make them germinate at times of year that they wouldn't normally. It also helps to make sure all the seeds in a batch germinate at the same time.
2) **INDUCING FLOWERING** — Some plants require certain conditions to flower, such as longer days or low temperatures. If these plants are treated with gibberellin, they will flower without any change in their environment. Gibberellin can also be used to grow bigger flowers.
3) **GROWING LARGER FRUIT** — Seedless varieties of fruit (e.g. seedless grapes) often do not grow as large as seeded fruit. However, if gibberellin is added to these fruit, they will grow larger to match the normal types.

Ethene Stimulates *Ripening of Fruit*

Some fruit will produce more ethene as it ripens.

1) Ethene is a gas produced by aging parts of a plant. It influences the growth of the plant by controlling cell division. It also stimulates enzymes that cause fruit to ripen.
2) Commercially, it can be used to speed up the ripening of fruits — either while they are still on the plant, or during transport to the shops.
3) This means that fruit can be picked while it's still unripe (and therefore firmer and less easily damaged). The gas is then added to the fruit on the way to the supermarket so that it will be perfect just as it reaches the shelves.
4) Ripening can also be delayed while the fruit is in storage by adding chemicals that block ethene's effect on the fruit or reduce the amount of ethene that the fruit can produce. Alternatively, some chemicals can be used that react with ethene to remove it from the air.

You will ripen when I SAY you can ripen — and NOT BEFORE...

Three different hormones, many different uses. Bet you didn't know plant hormones could be so useful...

Q1 Give one way that gibberellin is used commercially. [1 mark]

Revision Questions for Topic 5

Congratulations, you've made it to the end of Topic 5 — now for some questions to make sure you've been paying attention...

- Try these questions and tick off each one when you get it right.
- When you've done all the questions under a heading and are completely happy with it, tick it off.

Homeostasis and the Nervous System (p.65-72) ☐

1) What is a stimulus? ☐
2) Explain how negative feedback helps to maintain a stable internal environment. ☐
3) What makes up the central nervous system and what does it do? ☐
4) What is a synapse? ☐
5) What is the purpose of a reflex action? ☐
6) What is a reaction time? ☐
7) Give one thing the cerebral cortex is responsible for. ☐
8) Give three methods used by scientists to study the brain. ☐
9) Explain the roles of the following parts of the eye:
   a) cornea b) iris c) lens ☐
10) Describe the iris reflex. Why is this needed? ☐
11) What is the medical term for short-sightedness? ☐
12) Give three things that the body can do to reduce heat loss if it gets too cold. ☐

Hormones in Humans (p.73-80) ☐

13) What is a hormone? ☐
14) Give two differences between nervous and hormonal responses. ☐
15) Where is excess glucose stored in the body? ☐
16) What effect does the hormone glucagon have on blood glucose level? ☐
17) What is the difference between how type 1 and type 2 diabetes are usually controlled? ☐
18) Name three things that are reabsorbed by kidneys. ☐
19) What hormone controls the amount of water reabsorbed by the kidneys? ☐
20) What are the advantages and disadvantages of a kidney transplant over dialysis? ☐
21) Draw a timeline of the 28 day menstrual cycle.
    Label the four stages of the cycle and label when the egg is released. ☐
22) Describe two effects of FSH on the body. ☐
23) Which of the following is a hormonal contraceptive — condom, plastic IUD or diaphragm? ☐
24) Briefly describe how IVF is carried out. ☐
25) How does adrenaline prepare the body for 'fight or flight'? ☐

Plant Hormones (p.81-82) ☐

26) What is auxin? ☐
27) What is: a) phototropism? b) gravitropism? ☐
28) Explain how auxin causes plant roots to grow downwards. ☐
29) Give three ways that auxin can be used commercially. ☐
30) Which plant hormone is responsible for fruit ripening? ☐

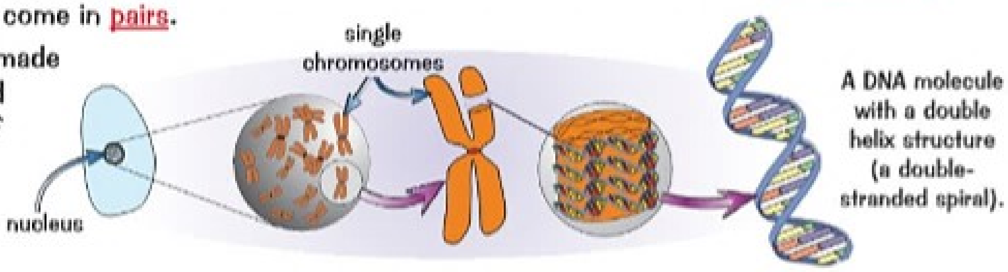
DNA

The first step in understanding genetics is getting to grips with DNA and genes.

Chromosomes Are Really Long Molecules of DNA

Head to the next page for more on the structure of DNA.

1) DNA stands for deoxyribonucleic acid. It's the chemical that all of the genetic material in a cell is made up from.
2) It contains coded information — basically all the instructions to put an organism together and make it work.
3) So it's what's in your DNA that determines what inherited characteristics you have.
4) DNA is found in the nucleus of animal and plant cells, in really long structures called chromosomes.
5) Chromosomes normally come in pairs.
6) DNA is a polymer. It's made up of two strands coiled together in the shape of a double helix.



A DNA molecule with a double helix structure (a double-stranded spiral).

A Gene Codes for a Specific Protein

1) A gene is a small section of DNA found on a chromosome.
2) Each gene codes for (tells the cells to make) a particular sequence of amino acids which are put together to make a specific protein.
3) Only 20 amino acids are used, but they make up thousands of different proteins.
4) Genes simply tell cells in what order to put the amino acids together (more on this on the next page).
5) DNA also determines what proteins the cell produces, e.g. haemoglobin, keratin.
6) That in turn determines what type of cell it is, e.g. red blood cell, skin cell.

Every Organism Has a Genome

1) Genome is just the fancy term for the entire set of genetic material in an organism.
2) Scientists have worked out the complete human genome.
3) Understanding the human genome is a really important tool for science and medicine for many reasons.
    1) It allows scientists to identify genes in the genome that are linked to different types of disease.
    2) Knowing which genes are linked to inherited diseases could help us to understand them better and could help us to develop effective treatments for them.
    3) Scientists can look at genomes to trace the migration of certain populations of people around the world. All modern humans are descended from a common ancestor who lived in Africa, but humans can now be found all over the planet. The human genome is mostly identical in all individuals, but as different populations of people migrated away from Africa, they gradually developed tiny differences in their genomes. By investigating these differences, scientists can work out when new populations split off in a different direction and what route they took.

Insert joke about genes and jeans here...

There are so many, I thought you could come up with your own as a bit of light relief.
Make sure that you're clued up on this stuff about DNA, genes and proteins before you move on.

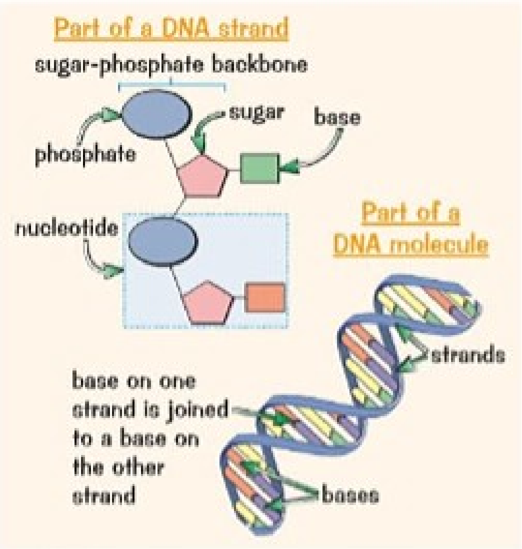
Q1 What is a gene? [3 marks]

Q2 What is an organism's genome? [1 mark]

The Structure of DNA and Protein Synthesis

So here's how life works — DNA molecules contain a genetic code that determines which proteins are built.

DNA is Made Up of Nucleotides



1) DNA strands are polymers made up of lots of repeating units called nucleotides.
2) Each nucleotide consists of one sugar molecule, one phosphate molecule and one 'base'.
3) The sugar and phosphate molecules in the nucleotides form a 'backbone' to the DNA strands. The sugar and phosphate molecules alternate. One of four different bases — A, T, C or G — joins to each sugar.
4) Each base links to a base on the opposite strand in the helix.
5) A always pairs up with T, and C always pairs up with G. This is called complementary base pairing.
6) It's the order of bases in a gene that decides the order of amino acids in a protein.
7) Each amino acid is coded for by a sequence of three bases in the gene.
8) The amino acids are joined together to make various proteins, depending on the order of the gene's bases.
9) There are parts of DNA that don't code for proteins. Some of these non-coding parts switch genes on and off, so they control whether or not a gene is expressed (used to make a protein).

mRNA Carries The Code to The Ribosomes

1) Proteins are made in the cell cytoplasm on tiny structures called ribosomes.
2) To make proteins, ribosomes use the code in the DNA. DNA is found in the cell nucleus and can't move out of it because it's really big. So the cell needs to get the code from the DNA to the ribosome.
3) This is done using a molecule called mRNA — which is made by copying the code from DNA. The mRNA acts as a messenger between the DNA and the ribosome — it carries the code between the two.
4) The correct amino acids are brought to the ribosomes in the correct order by carrier molecules.

Proteins Have Many Different Functions

When a chain of amino acids has been assembled, it folds into a unique shape which allows the protein to perform the task it's meant to do. Here are a few examples of types of protein:

1) **ENZYMES** — act as biological catalysts to speed up chemical reactions in the body (see page 28).
2) **HORMONES** — used to carry messages around the body. E.g. insulin is a hormone released into the blood by the pancreas to regulate the blood sugar level.
3) **STRUCTURAL PROTEINS** — are physically strong. E.g. collagen is a structural protein that strengthens connective tissues (like ligaments and cartilage).

Q: What do DNA and a game of rounders have in common?

A: four bases. Remember — the order of these bases in the DNA is copied into mRNA, which then moves to the ribosomes. Here, the chain of amino acids is assembled according to the order of the bases.

Q1 Which bases pair up according to complementary base pairing? [2 marks]

Mutations

Sometimes the sequence of DNA bases can be changed. These changes are called mutations. Read on...

Mutations are Changes to the Genetic Code

1) Occasionally a gene may mutate. A mutation is a random change in an organism's DNA. They can sometimes be inherited.
2) Mutations occur continuously. They can occur spontaneously, e.g. when a chromosome isn't quite replicated properly. However, the chance of mutation is increased by exposure to certain substances or some types of radiation.
3) Mutations change the sequence of the DNA bases in a gene, which produces a genetic variant (a different form of the gene). As the sequence of DNA bases codes for the sequence of amino acids that make up a protein (see page 84), mutations to a gene sometimes lead to changes in the protein that it codes for.
4) Most mutations have very little or no effect on the protein. Some will change it to such a small extent that its function or appearance is unaffected.
5) However, some mutations can seriously affect a protein. Sometimes, the mutation will code for an altered protein with a change in its shape. This could affect its ability to perform its function. E.g.
    1) If the shape of an enzyme's active site is changed, its substrate may no longer be able to bind to it.
    2) Structural proteins like collagen could lose their strength if their shape is changed, making them pretty useless at providing structure and support.

Enzymes are proteins — see page 28.

6) If there's a mutation in the non-coding DNA, it can alter how genes are expressed.

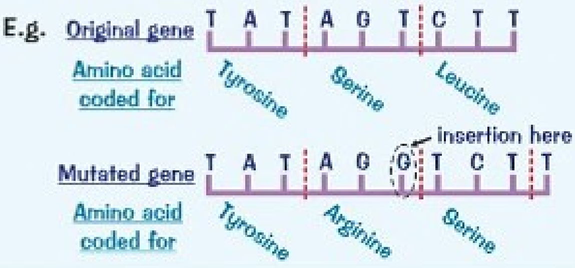
There's more on non-coding DNA on the previous page.

There Are Different Types of Mutation, For Example...

Insertions

1) Insertions are where a new base is inserted into the DNA base sequence where it shouldn't be.
2) You should remember from page 85 that every three bases in a DNA base sequence codes for a particular amino acid.
3) An insertion changes the way the groups of three bases are 'read', which can change the amino acids that they code for.
4) Insertions can change more than one amino acid as they have a knock-on effect on the bases further on in the sequence.

E.g.


Original gene
T A T A G T C T T
Amino acid coded for
Tyrosine
Serine
Leucine
insertion here
Mutated gene
T A T A G G T C T T
Amino acid coded for
Tyrosine
Arginine
Serine

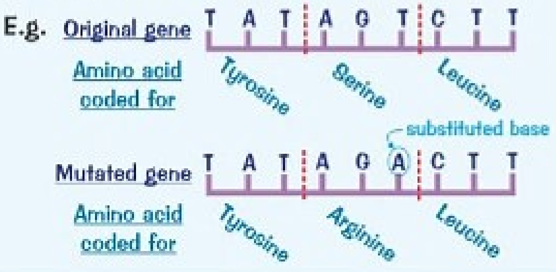
Deletions

1) Deletions are when a random base is deleted from the DNA base sequence.
2) Like insertions, they change the way that the base sequence is 'read' and have knock-on effects further down the sequence.

Substitutions

Substitution mutations are when a random base in the DNA base sequence is changed to a different base.

E.g.


Original gene
T A T A G T C T T
Amino acid coded for
Tyrosine
Serine
Leucine
substituted base
Mutated gene
T A T A G A C T T
Amino acid coded for
Tyrosine
Arginine
Leucine

Mutations — sometimes known to give ninja superpowers...

Remember, changes in bases can affect the amino acid sequence, and therefore the protein coded for.

Q1 What is a mutation? [1 mark]

Q2 Explain why the function of a protein may be affected by a gene mutation. [3 marks]

Reproduction

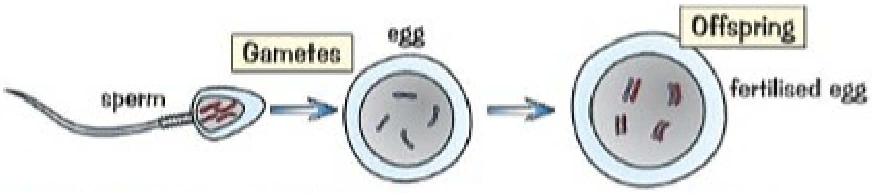
Ooo err, reproduction... Surely you knew it'd come up at some point. It can happen in two different ways...

Sexual Reproduction Produces *Genetically Different Cells*

1) Sexual reproduction is where genetic information from two organisms (a father and a mother) is combined to produce offspring which are genetically different to either parent.
2) In sexual reproduction, the mother and father produce gametes by meiosis (see next page) — e.g. egg and sperm cells in animals.
3) In humans, each gamete contains 23 chromosomes — half the number of chromosomes in a normal cell. (Instead of having two of each chromosome, a gamete has just one of each.)
4) The egg (from the mother) and the sperm cell (from the father) then fuse together (fertilisation) to form a cell with the full number of chromosomes (half from the father, half from the mother).

> SEXUAL REPRODUCTION involves the fusion of male and female gametes.
> Because there are TWO parents, the offspring contain a mixture of their parents' genes.

Fertilisation:



5) This is why the offspring inherits features from both parents — it's received a mixture of chromosomes from its mum and its dad (and it's the chromosomes that decide how you turn out).
6) This mixture of genetic information produces variation in the offspring. Pretty cool, eh.
7) Flowering plants can reproduce in this way too. They also have egg cells, but their version of sperm is known as pollen. Hmm... I'm having second thoughts about frolicking in that meadow now.

Asexual Reproduction Produces *Genetically Identical Cells*

1) In asexual reproduction there's only one parent so the offspring are genetically identical to that parent.
2) Asexual reproduction happens by mitosis — an ordinary cell makes a new cell by dividing in two (see page 15).
3) The new cell has exactly the same genetic information (i.e. genes) as the parent cell — it's called a clone.

> In ASEXUAL REPRODUCTION there's only ONE parent. There's no fusion of gametes, no mixing of chromosomes and no genetic variation between parent and offspring. The offspring are genetically identical to the parent — they're clones.

4) Bacteria, some plants and some animals reproduce asexually.

A handsome bunch — even if I do say so myself...

You need to reproduce these facts in the exam...

The main messages on this page are that: 1) sexual reproduction needs two parents and forms cells that are genetically different to the parents, so there's lots of genetic variation. And 2) asexual reproduction needs just one parent to make genetically identical cells, so there's no genetic variation in the offspring.

Q1 What type of cell division is involved in asexual reproduction? [1 mark]

Q2 Suggest why there is variation in the offspring of sexual reproduction. [2 marks]

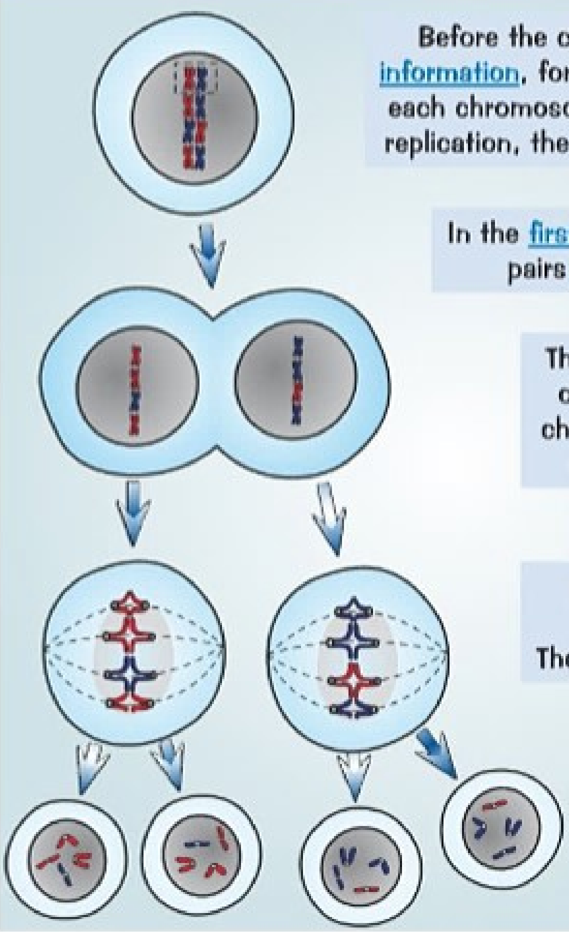
Meiosis

Now I bet you're wondering how gametes end up with half the number of chromosomes of a normal cell... or maybe you're not. Well, I'm going to tell you anyway. Step forward the marvellous process of meiosis.

Gametes Are Produced by Meiosis

1) As you know from the previous page, gametes only have one copy of each chromosome, so that when gamete fusion takes place, you get the right amount of chromosomes again (two copies of each).
2) To make gametes which only have half the original number of chromosomes, cells divide by meiosis. This process involves two cell divisions. In humans, it only happens in the reproductive organs (the ovaries in females and testes in males).

Meiosis Produces Cells Which Have Half the Normal Number of Chromosomes



Before the cell starts to divide, it duplicates its genetic information, forming two armed chromosomes — one arm of each chromosome is an exact copy of the other arm. After replication, the chromosomes arrange themselves into pairs.

The genetic information is stored in DNA — see p.84.

In the first division in meiosis the chromosome pairs line up in the centre of the cell.

The pairs are then pulled apart so each new cell only has one copy of each chromosome. Some of the father's chromosomes (shown in blue) and some of the mother's chromosomes (shown in red) go into each new cell.

In the second division, the chromosomes line up again in the centre of the cell. The arms of the chromosomes are pulled apart.

You get four gametes, each with only a single set of chromosomes in it. Each of the gametes is genetically different from the others because the chromosomes all get shuffled up during meiosis and each gamete only gets half of them, at random.

The Cell Produced by Gamete Fusion Replicates Itself

1) After two gametes have fused during fertilisation, the resulting new cell divides by mitosis to make a copy of itself.
2) Mitosis repeats many times to produce lots of new cells in an embryo.
3) As the embryo develops, these cells then start to differentiate (see page 14) into the different types of specialised cell that make up a whole organism.

There's loads on mitosis on page 15.

Now that I have your undivided attention...

Remember, in humans, meiosis only occurs in reproductive organs where gametes are being made.

Q1 How many cell divisions take place in meiosis? [1 mark]

More on Reproduction

As the line in Oliver Twist goes, "Please sir, I want some more... information about the types of reproduction". Something like that anyway. I'm feeling like a generous workhouse master today, so here's a full page.

Sexual Reproduction Has Advantages Over Asexual Reproduction

1) Offspring from sexual reproduction have a mixture of two sets of chromosomes. The organism inherits genes (and therefore features) from both parents, which produces variation in the offspring (see p.87).
2) Variation increases the chance of a species surviving a change in the environment. While a change in the environment could kill some individuals, it's likely that variation will have led to some of the offspring being able to survive in the new environment. They have a survival advantage.
3) Because individuals with characteristics that make them better adapted to the environment have a better chance of survival, they are more likely to breed successfully and pass the genes for the characteristics on. This is known as natural selection (see p.96).
4) We can use selective breeding to speed up natural selection. This allows us to produce animals with desirable characteristics. Selective breeding is where individuals with a desirable characteristic are bred to produce offspring that have the desirable characteristic too (see p.98). This means that we can increase food production, e.g. by breeding animals that produce a lot of meat.

Asexual Reproduction Has Advantages Over Sexual Reproduction

1) There only needs to be one parent.
2) This means that asexual reproduction uses less energy than sexual reproduction, because organisms don't have to find a mate.
3) This also means that asexual reproduction is faster than sexual reproduction.
4) Many identical offspring can be produced in favourable conditions.

Some Organisms Can Reproduce by Both Methods

Some organisms can reproduce sexually or asexually depending on their circumstances.
You need to know these examples:

1) Malaria is caused by a parasite that's spread by mosquitoes — see page 47. When a mosquito carrying the parasite bites a human, the parasite can be transferred to the human. The parasite reproduces sexually when it's in the mosquito and asexually when it's in the human host.
2) Many species of fungus can reproduce both sexually and asexually. These species release spores, which can become new fungi when they land in a suitable place. Spores can be produced sexually and asexually. Asexually-produced spores form fungi that are genetically identical to the parent fungus. Sexually-produced spores introduce variation and are often produced in response to an unfavourable change in the environment, increasing the chance that the population will survive the change.
3) Loads of species of plant produce seeds sexually, but can also reproduce asexually. Asexual reproduction can take place in different ways. For example, strawberry plants produce 'runners'. These are stems that grow horizontally on the surface of the soil away from a plant. At various points along the runner, a new strawberry plant forms that is identical to the original plant. Another example is in plants that grow from bulbs (e.g. daffodils). New bulbs can form from the main bulb and divide off. Each new bulb can grow into a new identical plant.

Well that's reproduction sorted... Well that's reproduction sorted...

It's key here to remember that both types of reproduction have their own different advantages.
Make sure you also know about organisms that can reproduce by both methods.

Q1 Give three advantages of asexual reproduction over sexual reproduction. [3 marks]

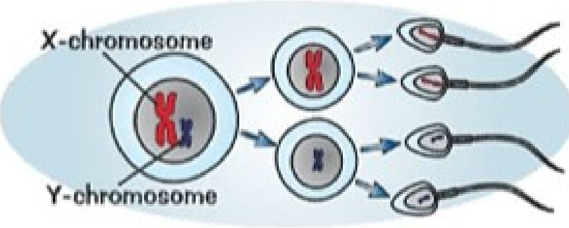
X and Y Chromosomes

Now for a couple of very important little chromosomes...

Your Chromosomes Control Whether You're Male or Female

There are 23 pairs of chromosomes in every human body cell (page 15). Of these, 22 are matched pairs of chromosomes that just control characteristics. The 23rd pair are labelled XY or XX. They're the two chromosomes that decide your sex — whether you turn out male or female.

Males have an X and a Y chromosome: XY
The Y chromosome causes male characteristics.
Females have two X chromosomes: XX
The XX combination allows female characteristics to develop.



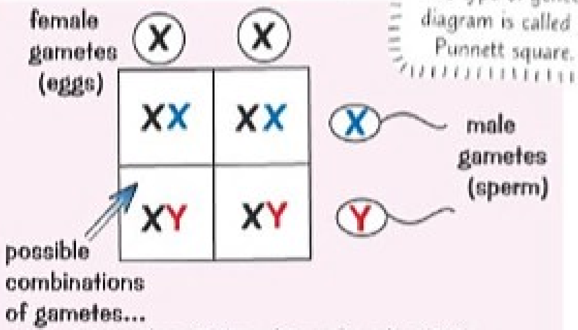
When making sperm, the X and Y chromosomes are drawn apart in the first division in meiosis (see page 88). There's a 50% chance each sperm cell gets an X-chromosome and a 50% chance it gets a Y-chromosome.

A similar thing happens when making eggs. But the original cell has two X-chromosomes, so all the eggs have one X-chromosome.

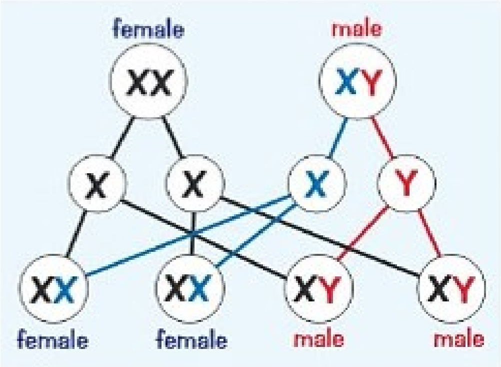
Genetic Diagrams Show the Possible Gamete Combinations

1) To find the probability of getting a boy or a girl, you can draw a genetic diagram.
2) Genetic diagrams are just models that are used to show all the possible genetic outcomes when you cross together different genes or chromosomes.
3) Put the possible gametes (eggs or sperm) from one parent down the side, and those from the other parent along the top.
4) Then in each middle square you fill in the letters from the top and side that line up with that square. The pairs of letters in the middle show the possible combinations of the gametes.
5) There are two XX results and two XY results, so there's the same probability of getting a boy or a girl.
6) Don't forget that this 50:50 ratio is only a probability at each pregnancy.

This type of genetic diagram is called a Punnett square.



...two males (XY) and two females (XX).



The other type of genetic diagram looks a bit more complicated, but it shows exactly the same thing.

1) At the top are the parents.
2) The middle circles show the possible gametes that are formed. One gamete from the female combines with one gamete from the male (during fertilisation).
3) The criss-cross lines show all the possible ways the X and Y chromosomes could combine. The possible combinations of the offspring are shown in the bottom circles.
4) Remember, only one of these possibilities would actually happen for any one offspring.

Have you got the Y-factor...

Most genetic diagrams you'll see in exams concentrate on a gene instead of a chromosome. But the principle's the same. Don't worry — there are loads of other examples on the following pages.

Q1 What combination of sex chromosomes do human females have? [1 mark]

Genetic Diagrams

Genetic diagrams, eh. They're not as scary as they look — you just need to practise them...

Some Characteristics are Controlled by Single Genes

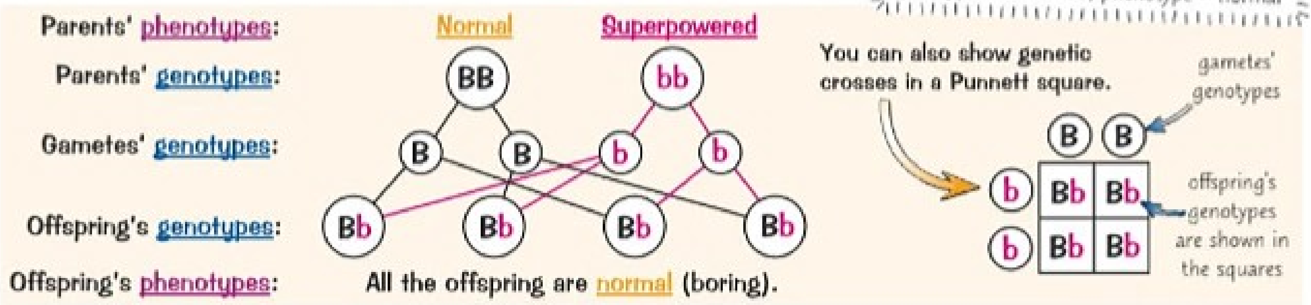
1) What genes you inherit control what characteristics you develop.
2) Different genes control different characteristics. Some characteristics are controlled by a single gene, e.g. mouse fur colour and red-green colour blindness in humans.
3) However, most characteristics are controlled by several genes interacting.
4) All genes exist in different versions called alleles (which are represented by letters in genetic diagrams).
5) You have two versions (alleles) of every gene in your body — one on each chromosome in a pair.
6) If an organism has two alleles for a particular gene that are the same, then it's homozygous for that trait. If its two alleles for a particular gene are different, then it's heterozygous.
7) If the two alleles are different, only one can determine what characteristic is present. The allele for the characteristic that's shown is called the dominant allele (use a capital letter for dominant alleles — e.g. 'C'). The other one is called recessive (and you show these with small letters — e.g. 'c').
8) For an organism to display a recessive characteristic, both its alleles must be recessive (e.g. cc). But to display a dominant characteristic the organism can be either CC or Cc, because the dominant allele overrules the recessive one if the plant/animal/other organism is heterozygous.
9) Your genotype is the combination of alleles you have. Your alleles work at a molecular level to determine what characteristics you have — your phenotype.

Genetic Diagrams Show the Possible Alleles of Offspring

Suppose you start breeding hamsters with superpowers. The allele which causes hamsters to have superpowers is recessive ("b"), whilst normal (boring) behaviour is due to a dominant allele ("B").

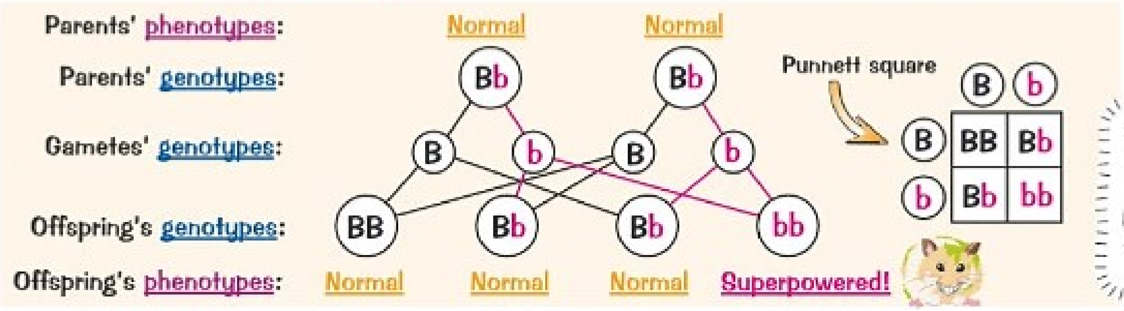
1) A superpowered hamster must have the genotype bb. But a normal hamster could be BB or Bb.
2) Here's what happens if you breed from two homozygous hamsters:

genotype = BB or Bb, phenotype = normal



Parents' phenotypes:
Normal
Superpowered
Parents' genotypes:
BB
bb
Gametes' genotypes:
B
B
b
b
Offspring's genotypes:
Bb
Bb
Bb
Bb
Offspring's phenotypes:
All the offspring are normal (boring).
You can also show genetic crosses in a Punnett square.
gametes' genotypes
B
B
b
Bb
Bb
b
Bb
Bb
offspring's genotypes are shown in the squares

3) If two of these offspring now breed, you'll get the next generation:



Parents' phenotypes:
Normal
Normal
Parents' genotypes:
Bb
Bb
Gametes' genotypes:
B
b
B
b
Offspring's genotypes:
BB
Bb
Bb
bb
Offspring's phenotypes:
Normal
Normal
Normal
Superpowered!
Punnett square
B
b
B
BB
Bb
b
Bb
bb

But remember — genetic diagrams only tell you probabilities. They don't say definitely what'll happen.

4) That's a 3:1 ratio of normal to superpowered offspring in this generation (a 1 in 4 or 25% probability of superpowers).

Your meanotype determines how nice you are to your sibling...

You need to be able to produce and interpret both of these types of genetic diagram for the exam.

Q1 Define genotype and phenotype. [2 marks]

More Genetic Diagrams

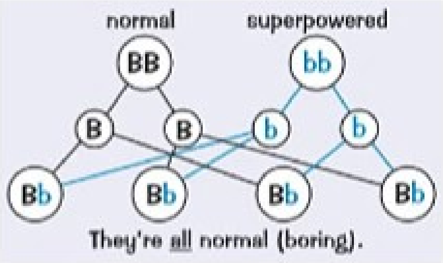
You've got to be able to predict and explain the outcomes of crosses between individuals for each possible combination of dominant and recessive alleles of a gene. You should be able to draw a genetic diagram and work it out — but it'll be easier if you've seen them all before. So here are a couple more examples for you. You also need to know how to interpret another type of genetic diagram called a family tree...

All the Offspring are Normal

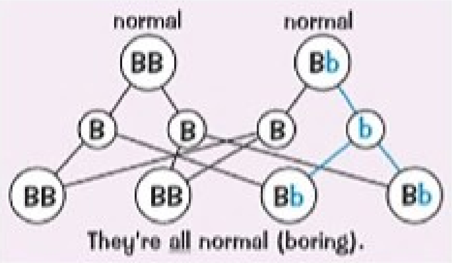
For a reminder on the terms homozygous and heterozygous, head to page 91.

Let's take another look at the superpowered hamster example from page 91:

In this cross, a homozygous dominant hamster (BB) is crossed with a homozygous recessive hamster (bb). All the offspring are normal (boring).


normal
superpowered
BB
bb
B
B
b
b
Bb
Bb
Bb
Bb
They're all normal (boring).

But, if you crossed a homozygous dominant hamster (BB) with a heterozygous hamster (Bb), you would also get all normal (boring) offspring.


normal
normal
BB
Bb
B
B
B
b
BB
BB
Bb
Bb
They're all normal (boring).

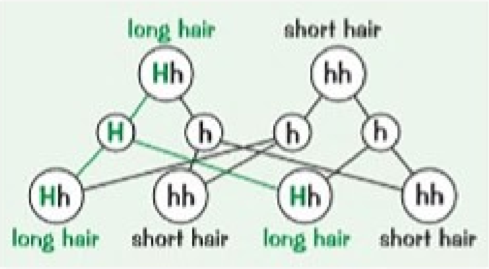
To find out which it was you'd have to breed the offspring together and see what kind of ratio you got that time — then you'd have a good idea. If it was 3:1, it's likely that you originally had BB and bb.

There's a 1:1 Ratio in the Offspring

A cat with long hair was bred with another cat with short hair. The long hair is caused by a dominant allele 'H', and the short hair by a recessive allele 'h'.

They had 8 kittens — 4 with long hair and 4 with short hair.

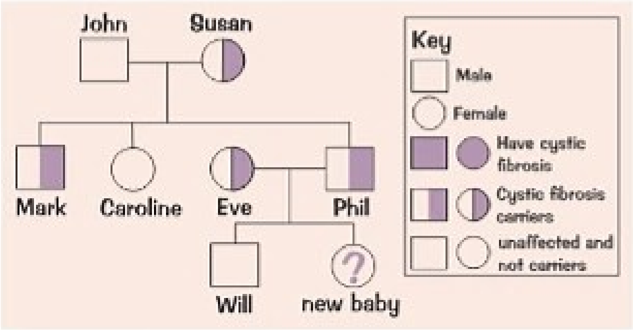
This is a 1:1 ratio — it's what you'd expect when a parent with only one dominant allele (heterozygous — Hh) is crossed with a parent with two recessive alleles (homozygous recessive — hh).


long hair
short hair
Hh
hh
H
h
h
h
Hh
hh
Hh
hh
long hair
short hair
long hair
short hair

You Need to be Able to Interpret Family Trees

Knowing how inheritance works can help you to interpret a family tree — this is one for cystic fibrosis (p.93).

1) From the family tree, you can tell that the allele for cystic fibrosis isn't dominant because plenty of the family carry the allele but don't have the disorder.
2) There is a 25% chance that the new baby will have the disorder and a 50% chance that it will be a carrier, as both of its parents are carriers but are unaffected. The case of the new baby is just the same as in the genetic diagram on page 93 — so the baby could be unaffected (FF), a carrier (Ff) or have cystic fibrosis (ff).


John
Susan
Mark
Caroline
Eve
Phil
Will
new baby
?
Key
Male
Female
Have cystic fibrosis
Cystic fibrosis carriers
unaffected and not carriers

It's enough to make you go cross-eyed...

In the exam, you might get a family tree showing the inheritance of a dominant allele — in this case, there won't be any carriers shown. Now, here's a practice question from the realm of mythical creatures.

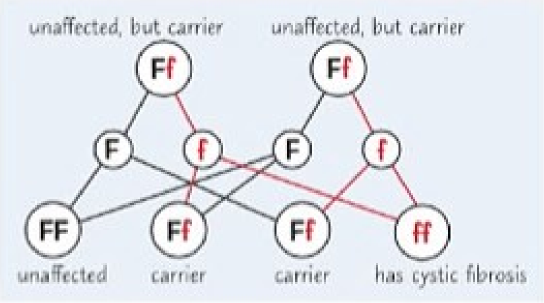
Q1 In merpeople, the dominant allele, T, causes a long tail and the recessive allele, t, causes a short tail. Using a Punnett square, predict the ratio of long to short tailed merbabies for a cross between a heterozygous merman and a mermaid who is homozygous recessive for tail length. [3 marks]

Inherited Disorders

Some disorders can be inherited from your parents. Many of these can be screened for in embryos.

Cystic Fibrosis is Caused by a *Recessive Allele*

Cystic fibrosis is a genetic disorder of the cell membranes. It results in the body producing a lot of thick sticky mucus in the air passages and in the pancreas.

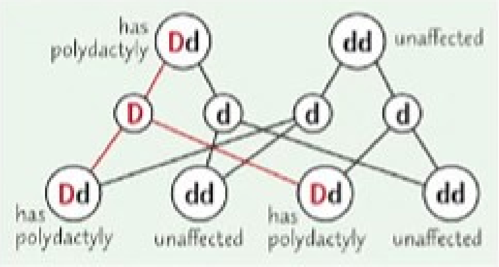


1) The allele which causes cystic fibrosis is a recessive allele, 'f', carried by about 1 person in 25.
2) Because it's recessive, people with only one copy of the allele won't have the disorder — they're known as carriers.
3) For a child to have the disorder, both parents must be either carriers or have the disorder themselves.
4) As the diagram shows, there's a 1 in 4 chance of a child having the disorder if both parents are carriers.

Polydactyly is Caused by a *Dominant Allele*

Polydactyly is a genetic disorder where a baby's born with extra fingers or toes. It doesn't usually cause any other problems so isn't life-threatening.

1) The disorder is caused by a dominant allele, 'D', and so can be inherited if just one parent carries the defective allele.
2) The parent that has the defective allele will have the condition too since the allele is dominant.
3) As the genetic diagram shows, there's a 50% chance of a child having the disorder if one parent has one D allele.



Embryos Can Be *Screened* for *Genetic Disorders*

1) During *in vitro* fertilisation (IVF), embryos are fertilised in a laboratory, and then implanted into the mother's womb.
2) Before being implanted, it's possible to remove a cell from each embryo and analyse its genes.
3) Many genetic disorders can be detected in this way, such as cystic fibrosis.
4) It's also possible to get DNA from an embryo in the womb and test that for disorders.
5) There are lots of ethical, social and economic concerns surrounding embryo screening.
6) Embryonic screening is quite controversial because of the decisions it can lead to.
7) For embryos produced by IVF — after screening, embryos with 'bad' alleles would be destroyed.
8) For embryos in the womb — screening could lead to the decision to terminate the pregnancy.
9) Here are some more arguments for and against screening:

Against Embryonic Screening	For Embryonic Screening
1) It implies that people with genetic problems are 'undesirable' — this could increase prejudice.	1) It will help to stop people suffering.
2) There may come a point where everyone wants to screen their embryos so they can pick the most 'desirable' one, e.g. they want a blue-eyed, blond-haired, intelligent boy.	2) Treating disorders costs the Government (and the taxpayers) a lot of money.
3) Screening is expensive.	3) There are laws to stop it going too far. At the moment parents cannot even select the sex of their baby (unless it's for health reasons).

Embryo screening — it's a tricky one...

Try writing a balanced argument for and against embryo screening — it's good practice.

Q1 Why won't someone heterozygous for the cystic fibrosis allele have the disorder? [3 marks]

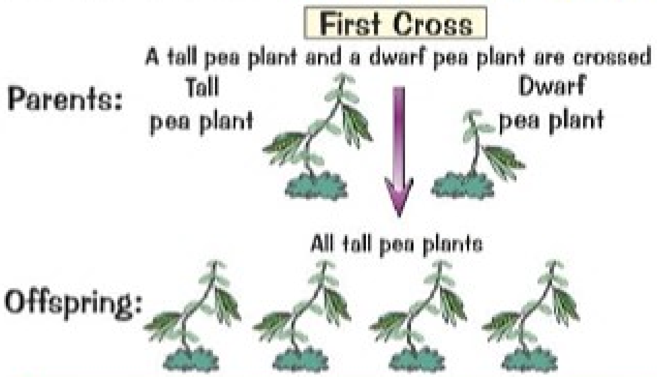
The Work of Mendel

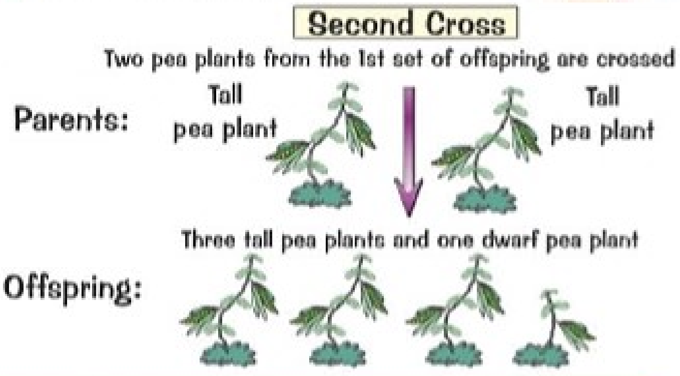
Some people forget about Mendel but I reckon he's the Granddaddy of Genetics. Here's a whole page on him.

Mendel Did Genetic Experiments with Pea Plants

Gregor Mendel was an Austrian monk who trained in mathematics and natural history at the University of Vienna. On his garden plot at the monastery in the mid 19th century, Mendel noted how characteristics in plants were passed on from one generation to the next. The results of his research were published in 1866 and eventually became the foundation of modern genetics.

The diagrams show two crosses for height in pea plants that Mendel carried out...


First Cross
A tall pea plant and a dwarf pea plant are crossed
Parents:
Tall pea plant
Dwarf pea plant
All tall pea plants
Offspring:


Second Cross
Two pea plants from the 1st set of offspring are crossed
Parents:
Tall pea plant
Tall pea plant
Three tall pea plants and one dwarf pea plant
Offspring:

Mendel had shown that the height characteristic in pea plants was determined by separately inherited "hereditary units" passed on from each parent. The ratios of tall and dwarf plants in the offspring showed that the unit for tall plants, T, was dominant over the unit for dwarf plants, t.

Mendel Reached Three Important Conclusions

Mendel reached these three important conclusions about heredity in plants:

1) Characteristics in plants are determined by "hereditary units".
2) Hereditary units are passed on to offspring unchanged from both parents, one unit from each parent.
3) Hereditary units can be dominant or recessive — if an individual has both the dominant and the recessive unit for a characteristic, the dominant characteristic will be expressed.

It Took a While For People to Understand His Work

1) Mendel's work was cutting edge and new to the scientists of the day. They didn't have the background knowledge to properly understand his findings — they had no idea about genes, DNA and chromosomes.
2) It wasn't until after his death that people realised how significant his work was.
3) Using Mendel's work as a starting point, the observations of many different scientists have contributed to the understanding of genes that we have today. For example:
    1) In the late 1800s, scientists became familiar with chromosomes. They were able to observe how they behaved during cell division.
    2) Then in the early 20th century, scientists realised that there were striking similarities in the way that chromosomes and Mendel's "units" acted. Based on this, it was proposed that the "units" were found on the chromosomes. We now know these "units" as genes.
    3) In 1953, the structure of DNA was determined (see page 85). This allowed scientists to go on and find out exactly how genes work.

Clearly, being a monk in the 1800s was a right laugh...

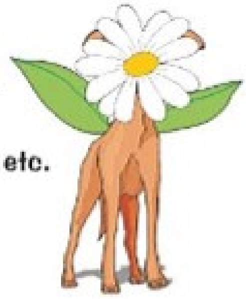
There was no TV in those days, you see, so Mendel filled his time by growing lots and lots of pea plants.

Q1 Suggest why the importance of Mendel's work wasn't realised straight away. [1 mark]

Variation

You'll probably have noticed that not all people are identical. There are reasons for this.

Organisms of the Same Species Have Differences



1) Different species look... well... different — my dog definitely doesn't look like a daisy.
2) But even organisms of the same species will usually look at least slightly different — e.g. in a room full of people you'll see different colour hair, individually shaped noses, etc.
3) These differences are called the variation within a species, and there are two types of variation — genetic variation and environmental variation.

Different Genes Cause Genetic Variation

1) All plants and animals have characteristics that are in some ways similar to their parents'.
2) This is because an organism's characteristics are determined by the genes inherited from their parents. (Genes are the codes inside your cells that control how you're made — more about these on page 84).
3) These genes are passed on in sex cells (gametes), from which the offspring develop (see page 87).
4) Most animals (and quite a lot of plants) get some genes from the mother and some from the father.
5) This combining of genes from two parents causes genetic variation — no two of the species are genetically identical (other than identical twins).
6) Some characteristics are determined only by genes (e.g. violet flower colour). In animals these include: eye colour, blood group and inherited disorders (e.g. haemophilia or cystic fibrosis).

Characteristics are also Influenced by the Environment

1) The environment, including the conditions that organisms live and grow in, also causes differences between members of the same species — this is called environmental variation.
2) For example, a plant grown in plenty of sunlight would be luscious and green, but the same plant grown in darkness would grow tall and spindly and have yellow leaves. These are environmental variations.
3) Environmental variation covers a wide range of differences — from losing your toes in a piranha attack, to getting a suntan, to having yellow leaves (never happened to me yet though), and so on.

Most Characteristics are Due to Genes AND the Environment

1) Most characteristics (e.g. body weight, height, skin colour, condition of teeth, academic or athletic prowess, etc.) are determined by a mixture of genetic and environmental factors.
2) For example, the maximum height that an animal or plant could grow to is determined by its genes. But whether it actually grows that tall depends on its environment (e.g. how much food it gets).

Mutations Introduce Variation

Mutations are covered in loads more detail on page 86.

1) Mutations are changes to the sequence of bases in DNA. As you saw on page 86, mutations can lead to changes in the protein that a gene codes for. Most mutations have no effect on the protein the gene codes for, so most mutations have no effect on the organism's phenotype. Some have a small influence on phenotype and so only alter characteristics slightly. However, although it's very rare, mutations can result in a new phenotype being seen in a species.
2) If the environment changes, and the new phenotype makes an individual more suited to the new environment, it can become common throughout the species relatively quickly by natural selection — see the next page.

My mum's got no trousers — cos I've got her jeans...

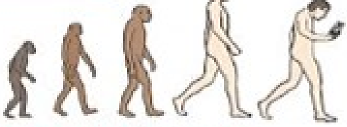
So you can't blame all of your faults on your parents — the environment usually plays a role too.

Q1 Explain what is meant by environmental variation. [2 marks]

Evolution

THEORY OF EVOLUTION: All of today's species have evolved from simple life forms that first started to develop over three billion years ago.

Only the Fittest Survive



Charles Darwin came up with a really important theory about evolution.
He used the observations he made on a huge round-the-world trip, along with experiments, discussions and new knowledge of fossils and geology, to suggest the theory of evolution by natural selection.

Charles Darwin

1) Darwin knew that organisms in a species show wide variation in their characteristics (phenotypic variation). He also knew that organisms have to compete for limited resources in an ecosystem.
2) Darwin concluded that the organisms with the most suitable characteristics for the environment would be more successful competitors and would be more likely to survive. This idea is called the 'survival of the fittest'.
3) The successful organisms that survive are more likely to reproduce and pass on the genes for the characteristics that made them successful to their offspring.
4) The organisms that are less well adapted would be less likely to survive and reproduce, so they are less likely to pass on their genes to the next generation.
5) Over time, beneficial characteristics become more common in the population and the species changes — it evolves.

New Discoveries Have Helped to Develop the Theory

1) Darwin's theory wasn't perfect. Because the relevant scientific knowledge wasn't available at the time, he couldn't give a good explanation for why new characteristics appeared or exactly how individual organisms passed on beneficial adaptations to their offspring.
2) We now know that phenotype is controlled by genes. New phenotypic variations arise because of genetic variants produced by mutations (changes in DNA — see page 86). Beneficial variations are passed on to future generations in the genes that parents contribute to their offspring.

The Development of a New Species is Called Speciation

1) Over a long period of time, the phenotype of organisms can change so much because of natural selection that a completely new species is formed. This is called speciation.
2) Speciation happens when populations of the same species change enough to become reproductively isolated — this means that they can't interbreed to produce fertile offspring.

There's more on speciation on p.102.

Extinction is When No Individuals of a Species Remain

The fossil record contains many species that don't exist any more — these species are said to be extinct.

Species become extinct for these reasons:

1) The environment changes too quickly (e.g. destruction of habitat).
2) A new predator kills them all (e.g. humans hunting them).
3) A new disease kills them all.
4) They can't compete with another (new) species for food.
5) A catastrophic event happens that kills them all (e.g. a volcanic eruption or a collision with an asteroid).

Dodos are now extinct. Humans not only hunted them, but introduced other animals which ate all their eggs, and we destroyed the forest where they lived — they really didn't stand a chance...

"Natural selection" — sounds like vegan chocolates...

Natural selection's all about the organisms with the best characteristics surviving to pass on their genes.

Q1 Give three factors that can lead to a species becoming extinct. [3 marks]

More About Evolution

There's a lot of evidence for the theory of evolution by natural selection.
But back in the day, poor Charlie Darwin didn't have half as much evidence to convince people.

Not Everyone Agreed with Darwin...

When Darwin proposed his theory in his book "On the Origin of Species" in 1859, his idea was very controversial for various reasons...

It went against common religious beliefs about how life on Earth developed — it was the first plausible explanation for the existence of life on earth without the need for a "Creator" (God).

Darwin couldn't explain why these new, useful characteristics appeared or how they were passed on from individual organisms to their offspring. But then he didn't know anything about genes or mutations — they weren't discovered 'til 50 years after his theory was published.

There wasn't enough evidence to convince many scientists, because not many other studies had been done into how organisms change over time.

...and Lamarck had Different Ideas

There were different scientific hypotheses about evolution around at the same time, such as Lamarck's:

1) Jean-Baptiste Lamarck (1744-1829) argued that changes that an organism acquires during its lifetime will be passed on to its offspring — e.g. he thought that if a characteristic was used a lot by an organism, then it would become more developed during its lifetime, and the organism's offspring would inherit the acquired characteristic.
2) For example, using this theory, if a rabbit used its legs to run a lot (to escape predators), then its legs would get longer. The offspring of that rabbit would then be born with longer legs.

Scientists Develop Different Hypotheses from Observations

1) Often scientists come up with different hypotheses to explain similar observations.
2) Scientists might develop different hypotheses because they have different beliefs (e.g. religious) or they have been influenced by different people (e.g. other scientists and their way of thinking)... or they just darn well think differently.
3) The only way to find out whose hypothesis is right is to find evidence to support or disprove each one.

There's more about making hypotheses on page 1.

4) For example, Lamarck and Darwin both had different hypotheses to explain how evolution happens. In the end...
   - Lamarck's hypothesis was eventually rejected because experiments didn't support his hypothesis. You can see it for yourself, e.g. if you dye a hamster's fur bright pink (not recommended), its offspring will still be born with the normal fur colour because the new characteristic won't have been passed on.
   - The discovery of genetics supported Darwin's idea because it provided an explanation of how organisms born with beneficial characteristics can pass them on (i.e. via their genes). Other evidence was also found by looking at fossils of different ages (the fossil record) — this allows you to see how changes in organisms developed slowly over time. The relatively recent discovery of how bacteria are able to evolve to become resistant to antibiotics also further supports evolution by natural selection.

5) There's so much evidence for Darwin's idea that it's now an accepted hypothesis (a theory).

Here's to crazy new ideas...

Science is fuelled by new ideas. Without them, we'd still think the world is flat and that mullets are cool.

Q1 Explain why Darwin's theory was considered controversial when it was first proposed. [3 marks]

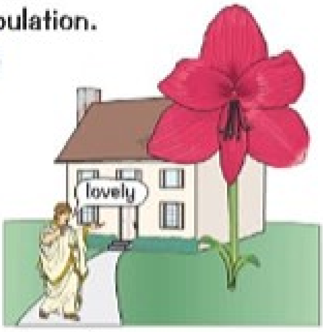
Selective Breeding

'Selective breeding' sounds like it has the potential to be a tricky topic, but it's actually dead simple. You take the best plants or animals and breed them together to get the best possible offspring. That's it.

Selective Breeding is Very Simple

Selective breeding is when humans artificially select the plants or animals that are going to breed so that the genes for particular characteristics remain in the population. Organisms are selectively bred to develop features that are useful or attractive, for example:

- Animals that produce more meat or milk.
- Crops with disease resistance.
- Dogs with a good, gentle temperament.
- Decorative plants with big or unusual flowers.



This is the basic process involved in selective breeding:

1) From your existing stock, select the ones which have the characteristics you're after.
2) Breed them with each other.
3) Select the best of the offspring, and breed them together.
4) Continue this process over several generations, and the desirable trait gets stronger and stronger. Eventually, all the offspring will have the characteristic.

Selective breeding is also known as 'artificial selection'.

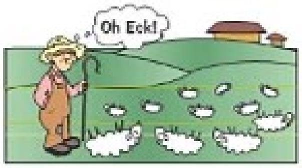
> In agriculture (farming), selective breeding can be used to improve yields. E.g. to improve meat yields, a farmer could breed together the cows and bulls with the best characteristics for producing meat, e.g. large size. After doing this for several generations the farmer would get cows with a very high meat yield.

5) Selective breeding is nothing new — people have been doing it for thousands of years. It's how we ended up with edible crops from wild plants and how we got domesticated animals like cows and dogs.

The Main Drawback is a Reduction in the Gene Pool

1) The main problem with selective breeding is that it reduces the gene pool — the number of different alleles (forms of a gene) in a population. This is because the farmer keeps breeding from the "best" animals or plants — which are all closely related. This is known as inbreeding.
2) Inbreeding can cause health problems because there's more chance of the organisms inheriting harmful genetic defects when the gene pool is limited. Some dog breeds are particularly susceptible to certain defects because of inbreeding — e.g. pugs often have breathing problems.
3) There can also be serious problems if a new disease appears, because there's not much variation in the population. All the stock are closely related to each other, so if one of them is going to be killed by a new disease, the others are also likely to succumb to it.

Selective Breeding → Reduction in the number of different alleles (forms of a gene) → Less chance of any resistant alleles being present in the population



I use the same genes all the time too — they flatter my hips...

Different breeds of dog came from selective breeding. For example, somebody thought 'I really like this small, yappy wolf — I'll breed it with this other one'. After thousands of generations, we got poodles.

Q1 Why might a plant nursery use selective breeding? [1 mark]

Q2 What potential issues can selective breeding cause? [3 marks]

Genetic Engineering

Genetic engineering is an interesting area of science with exciting possibilities, but there might be dangers too...

Genetic Engineering Transfers Genes Between Organisms

The basic idea of genetic engineering is to transfer a gene responsible for a desirable characteristic from one organism's genome into another organism, so that it also has the desired characteristic.

1) A useful gene is isolated (cut) from one organism's genome using enzymes and is inserted into a vector.
2) The vector is usually a virus or a bacterial plasmid (a fancy piece of circular DNA found in bacterial cells), depending on the type of organism that the gene is being transferred to.
3) When the vector is introduced to the target organism, the useful gene is inserted into its cell(s).
4) Scientists use this method to do all sorts of things. For example:
    1) Bacteria have been genetically modified to produce human insulin that can be used to treat diabetes.
    2) Genetically modified (GM) crops have had their genes modified, e.g. to improve the size and quality of their fruit, or make them resistant to disease, insects and herbicides (chemicals used to kill weeds).
    3) Sheep have been genetically engineered to produce substances, like drugs, in their milk that can be used to treat human diseases.
    4) Scientists are researching genetic modification treatments for inherited diseases caused by faulty genes, e.g. by inserting working genes into people with the disease. This is called gene therapy.

5) In some cases, the transfer of the gene is carried out when the organism receiving the gene is at an early stage of development (e.g. egg or embryo). This means that the organism develops with the characteristic coded for by the gene.

Genetic Engineering is a Controversial Topic

1) Genetic engineering is an exciting area of science, which has the potential for solving many of our problems (e.g. treating diseases, more efficient food production etc.), but not everyone thinks it's a great idea.
2) There are worries about the long-term effects of genetic engineering — that changing an organism's genes might accidentally create unplanned problems, which could get passed on to future generations.

There Are Pros and Cons of GM Crops

1) Some people say that growing GM crops will affect the number of wild flowers (and so the population of insects) that live in and around the crops — reducing farmland biodiversity.
2) Not everyone is convinced that GM crops are safe and some people are concerned that we might not fully understand the effects of eating them on human health. E.g. people are worried they may develop allergies to the food — although there's probably no more risk for this than for eating usual foods.
3) A big concern is that transplanted genes may get out into the natural environment. For example, the herbicide resistance gene may be picked up by weeds, creating a new 'superweed' variety.
4) On the plus side, the characteristics chosen for GM crops can increase the yield, making more food.
5) People living in developing nations often lack nutrients in their diets. GM crops could be engineered to contain the nutrient that's missing. For example, 'golden rice' is a GM rice crop that contains beta-carotene — lack of this substance causes blindness.
6) GM crops are already being grown in some places, often without any problems.

I say it's great.

If only there was a gene to make revision easier...

Make sure you've got everything on this page firmly in your noggin. You need to understand the lot.

Q1 Outline one benefit and one concern about GM crops. [2 marks]

Cloning

We can clone plants and animals in several different ways. Cool. But some of them have potential problems...

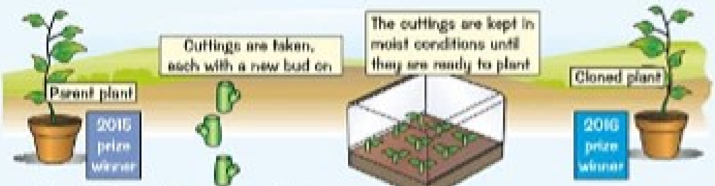
Plants Can Be Cloned by Tissue Culture and from Cuttings

TISSUE CULTURE

This is where a few plant cells are put in a growth medium with hormones, and they grow into new plants — clones of the parent plant. These plants can be made very quickly, in very little space, and be grown all year. Tissue culture is used by scientists to preserve rare plants that are hard to reproduce naturally and by plant nurseries to produce lots of stock quickly.

CUTTINGS

1) Gardeners can take cuttings from good parent plants, and then plant them to produce genetically identical copies (clones) of the parent plant.
2) These plants can be produced quickly and cheaply. This is an older, simpler method than tissue culture.


Parent plant
2015 prize winner
Cuttings are taken, each with a new bud on
The cuttings are kept in moist conditions until they are ready to plant
Cloned plant
2016 prize winner

You Can Make Animal Clones Using Embryo Transplants

Farmers can produce cloned offspring from their best bull and cow — using embryo transplants.

1) Sperm cells are taken from a prize bull and egg cells are taken from a prize cow. The sperm are then used to artificially fertilise an egg cell. The embryo that develops is then split many times (to form clones) before any cells become specialised.
2) These cloned embryos can then be implanted into lots of other cows where they grow into baby calves (which will all be genetically identical to each other).
3) Hundreds of "ideal" offspring can be produced every year from the best bull and cow.

Adult Cell Cloning is Another Way to Make a Clone

1) Adult cell cloning involves taking an unfertilised egg cell and removing its nucleus. The nucleus is then removed from an adult body cell (e.g. skin cell) and is inserted into the 'empty' egg cell.
2) The egg cell is then stimulated by an electric shock — this makes it divide, just like a normal embryo.
3) When the embryo is a ball of cells, it's implanted into the womb of an adult female. It grows into a genetically identical copy (clone) of the original adult body cell as it has the same genetic information.
4) This technique was used to create Dolly — the famous cloned sheep.

There are Many Issues Surrounding Cloning

1) Cloning quickly gets you lots of "ideal" offspring. But you also get a "reduced gene pool" — this means there are fewer different alleles in a population. If a population are all closely related and a new disease appears, they could all be wiped out — there may be no allele in the population giving resistance to it.
2) But the study of animal clones could lead to greater understanding of the development of the embryo, and of ageing and age-related disorders.
3) Cloning could also be used to help preserve endangered species.
4) However, it's possible that cloned animals might not be as healthy as normal ones, e.g. Dolly the sheep had arthritis, which tends to occur in older sheep (but the jury's still out on if this was due to cloning).
5) Some people worry that humans might be cloned in the future. If it was allowed, any success may follow many unsuccessful attempts, e.g. children born severely disabled.

Thank goodness they didn't do that with my little brother...

Cloning can be controversial — especially when it's to do with cloning animals (and especially humans).

Q1 Describe how animals can be cloned by adult cell cloning. [5 marks]

Fossils

Fossils are great. If they're well-preserved, you can see what oldy-worldy creatures looked like. They also show how living things have evolved. Although we're not sure how life started in the first place...

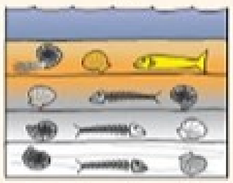
Fossils are the Remains of Plants and Animals

Fossils are the remains of organisms from many thousands of years ago, which are found in rocks. They provide the evidence that organisms lived ages ago. Fossils can tell us a lot about how much or how little organisms have changed (evolved) over time. Fossils form in rocks in one of three ways:

1) FROM GRADUAL REPLACEMENT BY MINERALS

(Most fossils happen this way.)

1) Things like teeth, shells, bones etc., which don't decay easily, can last a long time when buried.
2) They're eventually replaced by minerals as they decay, forming a rock-like substance shaped like the original hard part.
3) The surrounding sediments also turn to rock, but the fossil stays distinct inside the rock and eventually someone digs it up.



2) FROM CASTS AND IMPRESSIONS

1) Sometimes, fossils are formed when an organism is buried in a soft material like clay. The clay later hardens around it and the organism decays, leaving a cast of itself. An animal's burrow or a plant's roots (rootlet traces) can be preserved as casts.
2) Things like footprints can also be pressed into these materials when soft, leaving an impression when it hardens.

3) FROM PRESERVATION IN PLACES WHERE NO DECAY HAPPENS

1) In amber (a clear yellow 'stone' made from fossilised resin) and tar pits there's no oxygen or moisture so decay microbes can't survive.
2) In glaciers it's too cold for the decay microbes to work.
3) Peat bogs are too acidic for decay microbes.
(A fully preserved man they named 'Pete Marsh' was found in a bog.)

But No One Knows How Life Began

Fossils show how much or how little different organisms have changed (evolved) as life has developed on Earth over millions of years. But where did the first living thing come from...

1) There are various hypotheses suggesting how life first came into being, but no one really knows.
2) Maybe the first life forms came into existence in a primordial swamp (or under the sea) here on Earth. Maybe simple organic molecules were brought to Earth on comets — these could have then become more complex organic molecules, and eventually very simple life forms.
3) These hypotheses can't be supported or disproved because there's a lack of good, valid evidence:
   - Many early forms of life were soft-bodied, and soft tissue tends to decay away completely — so the fossil record is incomplete.
   - Fossils that did form millions of years ago may have been destroyed by geological activity, e.g. the movement of tectonic plates may have crushed fossils already formed in the rock.

Don't get bogged down by all this information...

It's a bit mind-boggling really how fossils can still exist even millions of years after the organism died. They really are fascinating things, and scientists have learned a whole lot from studying them in detail.

Q1 Suggest what makes low-oxygen environments suitable for the formation of fossils. [2 marks]

Speciation

Evolution (see page 96) leads to the development of lots of different species. This process is called speciation.

Speciation is the Development of a New Species

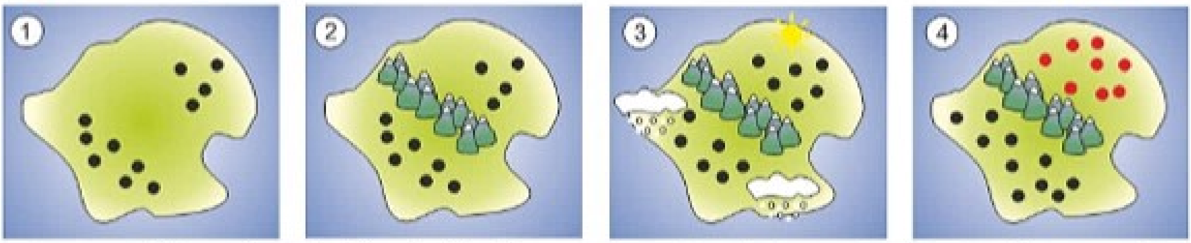
1) A species is a group of similar organisms that can reproduce to give fertile offspring.
2) Speciation is the development of a new species.
3) Speciation occurs when populations of the same species become so different that they can no longer successfully interbreed to produce fertile offspring.

Isolation and Natural Selection Lead to Speciation

Isolation is where populations of a species are separated. This can happen due to a physical barrier. E.g. floods and earthquakes can cause barriers that geographically isolate some individuals from the main population. Conditions on either side of the barrier will be slightly different, e.g. they may have different climates. Because the environment is different on each side, different characteristics will become more common in each population due to natural selection operating differently on the populations.

1) Each population shows genetic variation because they have a wide range of alleles.
2) In each population, individuals with characteristics that make them better adapted to their environment have a better chance of survival and so are more likely to breed successfully.
3) So the alleles that control the beneficial characteristics are more likely to be passed on to the next generation.

Eventually, individuals from the different populations will have changed so much that they won't be able to breed with one another to produce fertile offspring. The two groups will have become separate species.



Two populations of the same species ● = individual organism → Physical barriers separate populations. → Populations adapt to new environments. → Development of a new species.

Wallace Was a Pioneer of the Theory of Speciation

There's more on Darwin and natural selection on page 96.

1) Alfred Russel Wallace was a scientist working at the same time as Charles Darwin. He was one of the early scientists working on the idea of speciation. His observations greatly contributed to how we understand speciation today. Our current understanding developed as more evidence became available over time.
2) During his career, Wallace independently came up with the idea of natural selection and published work on the subject together with Darwin in 1858. This then prompted Darwin to publish 'On the Origin of Species' in 1859.
3) Observations made by Wallace as he travelled the world provided lots of evidence to support the theory of evolution by natural selection. For example, he realised that warning colours are used by some species (e.g. butterflies) to deter predators from eating them and that this was an example of a beneficial characteristic that had evolved by natural selection.
4) It's this work on warning colours and his work on speciation that he's most famous for.

If only Darwin's name had been Gromit...

Well isn't speciation riveting... Put some time into learning this page, then maybe grab a biscuit.

Q1 Why might natural selection work differently on two isolated populations of a species? [3 marks]

Antibiotic-Resistant Bacteria

The discovery of antibiotics, like penicillin, was a huge benefit to medicine — suddenly bacterial infections that had often been fatal could be cured. But unfortunately they might not be a permanent solution.

Bacteria can *Evolve* and Become *Antibiotic-Resistant*

1) Like all organisms, bacteria sometimes develop random mutations (see p.86) in their DNA. These can lead to changes in the bacteria's characteristics, e.g. being less affected by a particular antibiotic. This can lead to antibiotic-resistant strains forming as the gene for antibiotic resistance becomes more common in the population.
2) To make matters worse, because bacteria are so rapid at reproducing, they can evolve quite quickly.
3) For the bacterium, the ability to resist antibiotics is a big advantage. It's better able to survive, even in a host who's being treated to get rid of the infection, and so it lives for longer and reproduces many more times. This increases the population size of the antibiotic-resistant strain.

The gene for antibiotic resistance becomes more common in the population because of natural selection — see page 96 for more.

4) Antibiotic-resistant strains are a problem for people who become infected with these bacteria because they aren't immune to the new strain and there is no effective treatment. This means that the infection easily spreads between people. Sometimes drug companies can come up with a new antibiotic that's effective, but 'superbugs' that are resistant to most known antibiotics are becoming more common.
5) MRSA is a relatively common 'superbug' that's really hard to get rid of. It often affects people in hospitals and can be fatal if it enters their bloodstream.

Antibiotic Resistance is Becoming *More Common*

1) For the last few decades, we've been able to deal with bacterial infections pretty easily using antibiotics. The death rate from infectious bacterial diseases (e.g. pneumonia) has fallen dramatically.
2) But the problem of antibiotic resistance is getting worse — partly because of the overuse and inappropriate use of antibiotics, e.g. doctors prescribing them for non-serious conditions or infections caused by viruses.

Antibiotics don't kill viruses — see p.51.

3) The more often antibiotics are used, the bigger the problem of antibiotic resistance becomes, so it's important that doctors only prescribe antibiotics when they really need to:

   > It's not that antibiotics actually cause resistance — they create a situation where naturally resistant bacteria have an advantage and so increase in numbers.

4) It's also important that you take all the antibiotics a doctor prescribes for you:

   > Taking the full course makes sure that all the bacteria are destroyed, which means that there are none left to mutate and develop into antibiotic-resistant strains.

5) In farming, antibiotics can be given to animals to prevent them becoming ill and to make them grow faster. This can lead to the development of antibiotic-resistant bacteria in the animals which can then spread to humans, e.g. during meat preparation and consumption. Increasing concern about the overuse of antibiotics in agriculture has led to some countries restricting their use.
6) The increase in antibiotic resistance has encouraged drug companies to work on developing new antibiotics that are effective against the resistant strains. Unfortunately, the rate of development is slow, which means we're unlikely to be able to keep up with the demand for new drugs as more antibiotic-resistant strains develop and spread. It's also a very costly process.

Aaargh, a giant earwig! Run from the attack of the superbug...

The reality of 'superbugs' is even scarier than giant earwigs. Microorganisms that are resistant to all our drugs are a worrying thought. It'll be like going back in time to before antibiotics were invented.

Q1 Suggest a situation where antibiotics could be prescribed inappropriately. [1 mark]

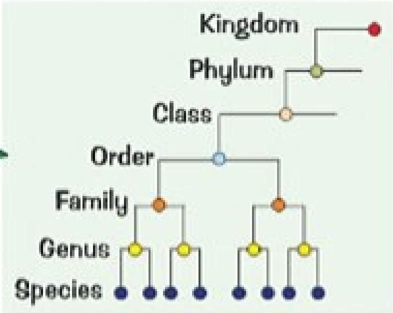
Q2 Explain why it's important that people take the full course of antibiotics they are prescribed. [2 marks]

Classification

It seems to be a basic human urge to want to classify things — that's the case in biology anyway...

Classification is Organising Living Organisms into Groups

1) Traditionally, organisms have been classified according to a system first proposed in the 1700's by Carl Linnaeus, which groups living things according to their characteristics and the structures that make them up.
2) In this system (known as the Linnaean system), living things are first divided into kingdoms (e.g. the plant kingdom).
3) The kingdoms are then subdivided into smaller and smaller groups — phylum, class, order, family, genus, species.



Classification Systems Change Over Time

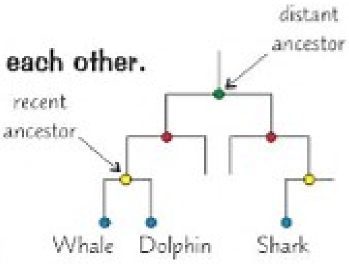
1) As knowledge of the biochemical processes taking place inside organisms developed and microscopes improved (which allowed us to find out more about the internal structures of organisms), scientists put forward new models of classification.
2) In 1990, Carl Woese proposed the three-domain system. Using evidence gathered from new chemical analysis techniques such as RNA sequence analysis, he found that in some cases, species thought to be closely related in traditional classification systems are in fact not as closely related as first thought.
3) In the three-domain system, organisms are first of all split into three large groups called domains:
   1) **ARCHAEA** — Organisms in this domain are primitive bacteria. They're often found in extreme places such as hot springs and salt lakes.
   2) **BACTERIA** — This domain contains true bacteria like *E. coli* and *Staphylococcus*. Although they often look similar to Archaea, there are lots of biochemical differences between them.
   3) **EUKARYOTA** — This domain includes a broad range of organisms including fungi (page 46), plants, animals and protists (page 46).
4) These are then subdivided into smaller groups — kingdom, phylum, class, order, family, genus, species.

Organisms Are Named According to the Binomial System

1) In the binomial system, every organism is given its own two-part Latin name.
2) The first part refers to the genus that the organism belongs to. This gives you information on the organism's ancestry. The second part refers to the species. E.g. humans are known as *Homo sapiens*. '*Homo*' is the genus and '*sapiens*' is the species.
3) The binomial system is used worldwide and means that scientists in different countries or who speak different languages all refer to a particular species by the same name — avoiding potential confusion.

Evolutionary Trees Show Evolutionary Relationships

1) Evolutionary trees show how scientists think different species are related to each other.
2) They show common ancestors and relationships between species. The more recent the common ancestor, the more closely related the two species — and the more characteristics they're likely to share.
3) Scientists analyse lots of different types of data to work out evolutionary relationships. For living organisms, they use the current classification data (e.g. DNA analysis and structural similarities). For extinct species, they use information from the fossil record (see page 96).



Whales and dolphins have a recent common ancestor so are closely related. They're both more distantly related to sharks.

Binomial system — uh oh, sounds like maths...

Sometimes, the genus in a binomial name is abbreviated to a capital letter with a full stop after it.

Q1 What genus does the Eurasian beaver, *Castor fiber*, belong to? [1 mark]

Revision Questions for Topic 6

So you've finished Topic 6 — Hoorah. Now here's a page full of questions to test your knowledge. Get in.

- Try these questions and tick off each one when you get it right.
- When you've done all the questions under a heading and are completely happy with it, tick it off.

DNA, Genes and Mutations (p.84-86) ☐

1) What do genes code for? ☐
2) List the parts of a DNA nucleotide. ☐
3) How many bases in a DNA sequence code for one amino acid? ☐
4) Give a function of the non-coding parts of DNA. ☐
5) Explain how mutations can lead to a change in the protein coded for by a gene. ☐
6) True or False: "Most mutations have little or no effect on the protein coded for by a gene". ☐

Reproduction and Meiosis (p.87-89) ☐

7) Name the male and female gametes of animals. ☐
8) Which type of reproduction produces genetically identical cells? ☐
9) State the type of cell division used to make gametes in humans. ☐
10) How does variation in a population increase its chance of surviving environmental change? ☐
11) Describe the methods of sexual and asexual reproduction used by strawberry plants. ☐

Sex Chromosomes, Genetic Diagrams and Inherited Disorders (p.90-93) ☐

12) What is the probability that offspring will have the XX combination of sex chromosomes? ☐
13) How many genes are responsible for controlling fur colour in mice? ☐
14) What are alleles? ☐
15) What does it mean if someone is heterozygous for a gene? ☐
16) What is the chance of a child being born with polydactyly if one parent has a single dominant allele for the gene that controls it? ☐
17) Give two arguments for and two arguments against screening embryos for genetic disorders. ☐

Mendel, Variation and Evolution (p.94-97) ☐

18) What do we now know Mendel's "units" as? ☐
19) What is variation? ☐
20) Explain how beneficial characteristics can become more common in a population over time. ☐
21) What was Jean-Baptiste Lamarck's theory about evolution? ☐

Selective Breeding, Genetic Engineering and Cloning (p.98-100) ☐

22) What is selective breeding? ☐
23) How might farmers use selective breeding? ☐
24) What is genetic engineering? ☐
25) How can embryo transplants be used to create animal clones? ☐

Fossils, Speciation and Antibiotic-Resistant Bacteria (p.101-103) ☐

26) Give two ways that fossils can be formed. ☐
27) What is speciation and when can it occur? ☐
28) What leads to the formation of antibiotic-resistant strains of bacteria? ☐

Classification (p.104) ☐

29) Name the groups that organisms are classified into in the Linnaean system. ☐
30) Who proposed the 'three-domain system' of classification in 1990? ☐

Competition

Ecology is all about organisms and the environment they live in, and how the two interact. Simples.

First Learn Some Words to Help You Understand Ecology...

This topic will make a lot more sense if you become familiar with these terms first:

1) Habitat — the place where an organism lives.
2) Population — all the organisms of one species living in a habitat.
3) Community — the populations of different species living in a habitat.
4) Abiotic factors — non-living factors of the environment, e.g. temperature.
5) Biotic factors — living factors of the environment, e.g. food.
6) Ecosystem — the interaction of a community of living organisms (biotic) with the non-living (abiotic) parts of their environment.

There's more about abiotic and biotic factors on the next page.

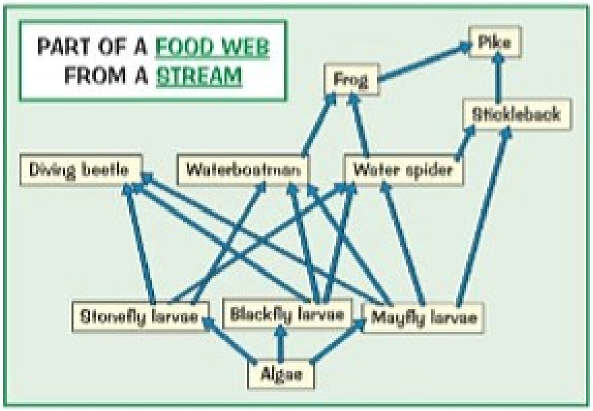
Organisms Compete for Resources to Survive

Organisms need things from their environment and from other organisms in order to survive and reproduce:

1) Plants need light and space, as well as water and mineral ions (nutrients) from the soil.
2) Animals need space (territory), food, water and mates.

Organisms compete with other species (and members of their own species) for the same resources.

Any Change in Any Environment can Have Knock-on Effects



In a community, each species depends on other species for things such as food, shelter, pollination and seed dispersal — this is called interdependence.

The interdependence of all the living things in an ecosystem means that any major change in the ecosystem (such as one species being removed) can have far-reaching effects.

The diagram on the right shows part of a food web (a diagram of what eats what) from a stream.

Stonefly larvae are particularly sensitive to pollution. Suppose pollution killed them in this stream. The table below shows some of the effects this might have on some of the other organisms in the food web.

Organism	Effect of loss of stonefly larvae	Effect on population
Blackfly larvae	Less competition for algae	Increase
	More likely to be eaten by predators	Decrease
Water spider	Less food	Decrease
Stickleback	Less food (if water spider or mayfly larvae numbers decrease)	Decrease

Remember that food webs are very complex and that these effects are difficult to predict accurately.

In some communities, all the species and environmental factors are in balance so that the population sizes are roughly constant (they may go up and down in cycles — see p.109). These are called stable communities. Stable communities include tropical rainforests and ancient oak woodlands.

I'm dependent on the cocoa tree...

If my source of chocolate was removed, it would have far-reaching effects on my revision and exam grades. Seriously though, make sure you know what organisms need and compete for in an ecosystem. Then try these...

Q1 What is an ecosystem? [1 mark]

Q2 Give three things plants compete for in an ecosystem. [3 marks]

Q3 What is meant by a 'stable community'? [1 mark]

Abiotic and Biotic Factors

The environment in which organisms live changes all the time. The things that change are either abiotic (non-living) or biotic (living) factors. These can have a big effect on a community...

Abiotic Factors Can *Vary* in an *Ecosystem*...

Abiotic factors are non-living factors. For example:

1) Moisture level
2) Light intensity
3) Temperature
4) Carbon dioxide level (for plants)
5) Wind intensity and direction
6) Oxygen level (for aquatic animals)
7) Soil pH and mineral content

A change in the environment could be an increase or decrease in an abiotic factor, e.g. an increase in temperature. These changes can affect the size of populations in a community. This means they can also affect the population sizes of other organisms that depend on them (see previous page).

For example, a decrease in light intensity, temperature or level of carbon dioxide could decrease the rate of photosynthesis in a plant species (see p.57). This could affect plant growth and cause a decrease in the population size.

For example, a decrease in the mineral content of the soil (e.g. a lack of nitrates) could cause nutrient deficiencies (see p.55). This could also affect plant growth and cause a decrease in the population size.

Animals depend on plants for food, so a decrease in a plant population could affect the animal species in a community.

...and So Can *Biotic Factors*

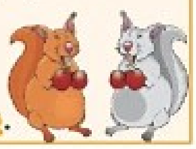
Biotic factors are living factors. Here are some examples:

1) New predators arriving
2) Competition — one species may outcompete another so that numbers are too low to breed
3) New pathogens
4) Availability of food

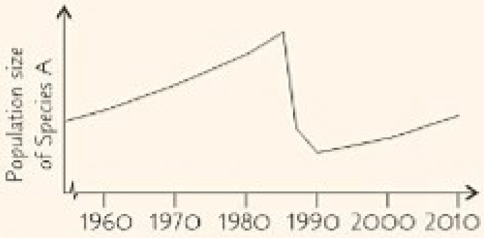
A change in the environment could be the introduction of a new biotic factor, e.g. a new predator or pathogen. These changes can also affect the size of populations in a community, which can have knock-on effects because of interdependence (see previous page).

For example, a new predator could cause a decrease in the prey population. There's more about predator-prey populations on p.109.

For example, red and grey squirrels live in the same habitat and eat the same food. Grey squirrels outcompete the red squirrels — so the population of red squirrels is decreasing.



The following graph shows the effect of a new pathogen on Species A. The population size of species A was increasing up until 1985, when it decreased rapidly until 1990 — suggesting that 1985 was the year that the new pathogen arrived. The population started to rise again after 1990.



Exams — a type of abiotic factor affecting my environment...

So, two lists of factors that would be a good idea to learn. I reckon this is a prime time for shutting the book, scribbling them all down and then checking how you did. Also, have a gander at that squirrel example.

Q1 Give four examples of abiotic factors that could affect a plant species. [4 marks]

Q2 Cutthroat trout are present in lakes in Yellowstone National Park. In the last few decades, lake trout have been introduced to the lakes. However, lake trout have emerged as predators of the cutthroat trout. Give two other biotic factors that could affect the size of the cutthroat trout population. [2 marks]

Adaptations

Life exists in so many different environments because the organisms that live in them have adapted to them.

Adaptations Allow Organisms to Survive

Organisms, including microorganisms, are adapted to live in different environmental conditions. The features or characteristics that allow them to do this are called adaptations. Adaptations can be:

1) Structural

These are features of an organism's body structure — such as shape or colour. For example:

Arctic animals like the Arctic fox have white fur so they're camouflaged against the snow. This helps them avoid predators and sneak up on prey.

Animals that live in cold places (like whales) have a thick layer of blubber (fat) and a low surface area to volume ratio to help them retain heat.

Animals that live in hot places (like camels) have a thin layer of fat and a large surface area to volume ratio to help them lose heat.

2) Behavioural

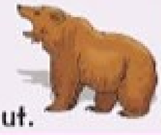
These are ways that organisms behave. Many species (e.g. swallows) migrate to warmer climates during the winter to avoid the problems of living in cold conditions.

3) Functional

These are things that go on inside an organism's body that can be related to processes like reproduction and metabolism (all the chemical reactions happening in the body). For example:

Desert animals conserve water by producing very little sweat and small amounts of concentrated urine.

Brown bears hibernate over winter. They lower their metabolism which conserves energy, so they don't have to hunt when there's not much food about.



Microorganisms Have a Huge Variety of Adaptations...

...so that they can live in a wide range of environments:

Some microorganisms (e.g. bacteria) are known as extremophiles — they're adapted to live in very extreme conditions. For example, some can live at high temperatures (e.g. in super hot volcanic vents), and others can live in places with a high salt concentration (e.g. very salty lakes) or at high pressure (e.g. deep sea vents).

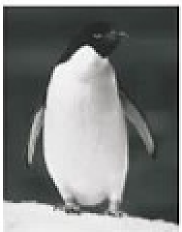
In a nutshell, it's horses for courses...

In the exam, you might have to say how an organism is adapted to its environment. Look at its characteristics (e.g. colour/shape) as well as the conditions it has to cope with (e.g. predation/temperature) and you'll be sorted.

Q1 The diagram on the right shows a penguin. Penguins live in the cold, icy environment of the Antarctic. They swim in the sea to hunt for fish to eat. Some penguins also huddle together in large groups to keep warm.

a) What type of adaptation is being described when penguins 'huddle together'? [1 mark]

b) Explain one structural adaptation a penguin has to its environment. [2 marks]

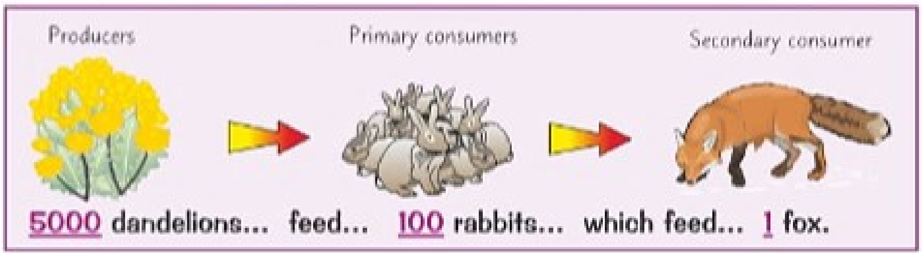


Food Chains

If you like food, and you like chains, then food chains might just blow your mind. Strap yourself in and prepare for some 'edge of your seat' learning, because the show is about to begin...

Food Chains Show What's Eaten by What in an Ecosystem

1) Food chains always start with a producer.
   Producers make (produce) their own food using energy from the Sun.
2) Producers are usually green plants or algae — they make glucose by photosynthesis (see page 57).
3) When a green plant produces glucose, some of it is used to make other biological molecules in the plant.
4) These biological molecules are the plant's biomass — the mass of living material.
5) Biomass can be thought of as energy stored in a plant.
6) Energy is transferred through living organisms in an ecosystem when organisms eat other organisms.
7) Producers are eaten by primary consumers. Primary consumers are then eaten by secondary consumers and secondary consumers are eaten by tertiary consumers. Here's an example of a food chain:


Producers
Primary consumers
Secondary consumer
5000 dandelions... feed... 100 rabbits... which feed... 1 fox.

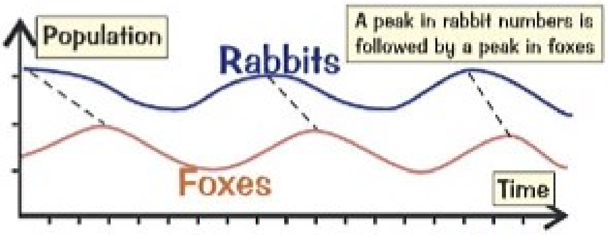
Consumers are organisms that eat other organisms. 'Primary' means 'first', so primary consumers are the first consumers in a food chain. Secondary consumers are second and tertiary consumers are third.

Populations of Prey and Predators Go in Cycles

Consumers that hunt and kill other animals are called predators, and their prey are what they eat. In a stable community containing prey and predators (as most of them do of course):

For more about a stable community see page 106.

1) The population of any species is usually limited by the amount of food available.
2) If the population of the prey increases, then so will the population of the predators.
3) However as the population of predators increases, the number of prey will decrease.



E.g. More grass means more rabbits.
More rabbits means more foxes.
But more foxes means fewer rabbits.
Eventually fewer rabbits will mean fewer foxes again.
This up and down pattern continues...

4) Predator-prey cycles are always out of phase with each other. This is because it takes a while for one population to respond to changes in the other population. E.g. when the number of rabbits goes up, the number of foxes doesn't increase immediately because it takes time for them to reproduce.

When the TV volume goes up... my revision goes down...

You might think that the start of a food chain always has to be a plant. In most cases it is, but sometimes organisms like algae can be too because they photosynthesise. No wonder those algae I saw were looking smug...

Q1 Look at the following food chain for a particular area: grass → grasshopper → rat → snake
- a) Name the producer in the food chain. [1 mark]
- b) How many consumers are there in the food chain? [1 mark]
- c) Name the primary consumer in the food chain. [1 mark]
- d) All the rats in the area are killed. Explain two effects that this could have on the food chain. [4 marks]

PRACTICAL

Using Quadrats

This is where the fun starts. Studying ecology gives you the chance to rummage around in bushes, get your hands dirty and look at some real organisms, living in the wild. Hold on to your hats folks...

Organisms Live in Different Places Because The Environment Varies

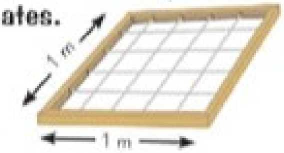
1) As you know from page 106, a habitat is the place where an organism lives, e.g. a playing field.
2) The distribution of an organism is where an organism is found, e.g. in a part of the playing field.
3) Where an organism is found is affected by environmental factors (see page 107). An organism might be more common in one area than another due to differences in environmental factors between the two areas. For example, in the playing field, you might find that daisies are more common in the open than under trees, because there's more light available in the open.
4) There are a couple of ways to study the distribution of an organism. You can:
    - measure how common an organism is in two sample areas (e.g. using quadrats) and compare them.
    - study how the distribution changes across an area, e.g. by placing quadrats along a transect (p.111).

    Both of these methods give quantitative data (numbers) about the distribution.

Use Quadrats to Study The Distribution of Small Organisms

A quadrat is a square frame enclosing a known area, e.g. 1 m^2. To compare how common an organism is in two sample areas (e.g. shady and sunny spots in that playing field) just follow these simple steps:

A quadrat



1) Place a 1 m^2 quadrat on the ground at a random point within the first sample area. E.g. divide the area into a grid and use a random number generator to pick coordinates.
2) Count all the organisms within the quadrat.
3) Repeat steps 1 and 2 as many times as you can.
4) Work out the mean number of organisms per quadrat within the first sample area.

EXAMPLE: Anna counted the number of daisies in 7 quadrats within her first sample area and recorded the following results: 18, 20, 22, 23, 23, 23, 25

Here the MEAN is: $\frac{\text{TOTAL number of organisms}}{\text{NUMBER of quadrats}} = \frac{154}{7}$ = 22 daisies per quadrat

5) Repeat steps 1 to 4 in the second sample area.
6) Finally compare the two means. E.g. you might find 2 daisies per m^2 in the shade, and 22 daisies per m^2 (lots more) in the open field.

You Can Also Work Out the Population Size of an Organism in One Area

EXAMPLE: Students used 0.5 m^2 quadrats to randomly sample daisies on an open field. The students found a mean of 10.5 daisies per quadrat. The field had an area of 800 m^2. Estimate the population of daisies on the field.

1) Work out the mean number of organisms per m^2. $1 \div 0.5 = 2$
   $2 \times 10.5 = 21$ daisies per m^2
2) Then multiply the mean by the total area (in m^2) of the habitat. $800 \times 21 = 16\,800$ daisies on the open field

The population size of an organism is sometimes called its abundance.

If your quadrat has an area of 1 m^2, the mean number of organisms per m^2 is just the same as the mean number per quadrat.

Drat, drat, and double drat — my favourite use of quadrats...

It's key that you make sure you put your quadrat down in a random place before you start counting.

Q1 A field was randomly sampled for buttercups using 0.25 m^2 quadrats. The field had an area of 1200 m^2. A mean of 0.75 buttercups were found per quadrat. Estimate the total population of buttercups. [2 marks]

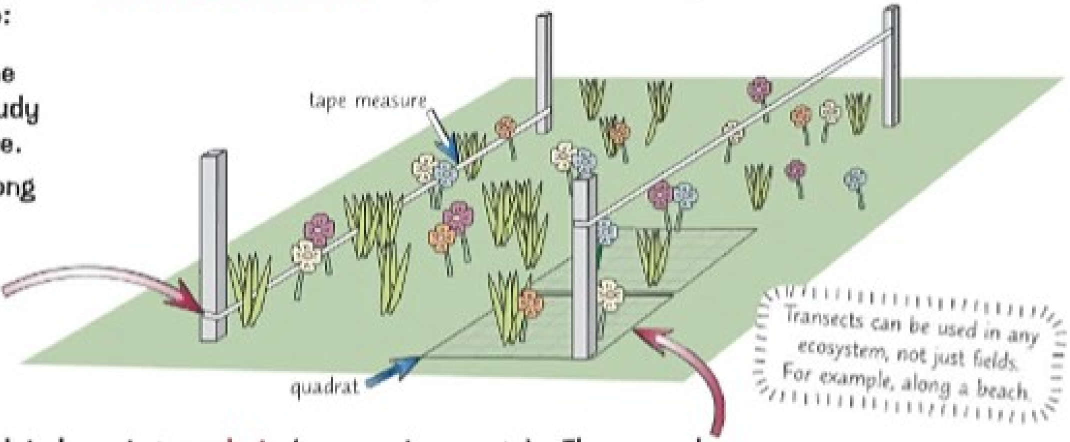
Using Transects

PRACTICAL

So, now you think you've learnt all about distribution. Well hold on — there's more ecology fun to be had.

Use Transects to Study The Distribution of Organisms Along a Line

You can use lines called transects to help find out how organisms (like plants) are distributed across an area — e.g. if an organism becomes more or less common as you move from a hedge towards the middle of a field. Here's what to do:



Transects can be used in any ecosystem, not just fields. For example, along a beach.

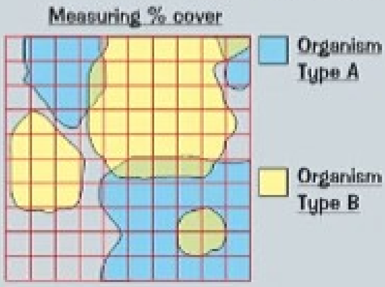
1) Mark out a line in the area you want to study using a tape measure.
2) Then collect data along the line.
3) You can do this by just counting all the organisms you're interested in that touch the line.
4) Or, you can collect data by using quadrats (see previous page). These can be placed next to each other along the line or at intervals, for example, every 2 m.

You Can Estimate the Percentage Cover of a Quadrat

If it's difficult to count all the individual organisms in the quadrat (e.g. if they're grass) you can calculate the percentage cover. This means estimating the percentage area of the quadrat covered by a particular type of organism, e.g. by counting the number of little squares covered by the organisms.

EXAMPLE:

Some students were measuring the distribution of organisms from one corner of a school playing field to another, using quadrats placed at regular intervals along a transect. Below is a picture of one of the quadrats. Calculate the percentage cover of each organism, A and B.



You count a square if it's more than half covered.

1) Count the number of squares covered by organism A.	Type A = 42 squares
2) Make this into a percentage — divide the number of squares covered by the organism by the total number of squares in the quadrat (100), then multiply the result by 100.	(42/100) × 100 = 0.42 × 100 = 42%
3) Do the same for organism B.	Type B = 47 squares (47/100) × 100 = 0.47 × 100 = 47%

A slug that's been run over — definitely a widely-spread organism

So if you want to measure the distribution of a organism across an area, you could use a transect. You can either use them alone or along with quadrats. Now who's for a game of tennis... I've got my transect up.

Q1 What is a transect? [1 mark]

Q2 Some students want to measure how the distribution of dandelions changes across a field, from one corner to another. Describe a method they could use to do this. [2 marks]

Q3 How could you estimate the number of organisms in a quadrat, if they are difficult to count? [1 mark]

Environmental Change & The Water Cycle

Now you know how to measure the distribution of organisms (see pages 110-111), it's time to learn why their distribution may change over time. Then it's on to something completely different — the water cycle.

Environmental Changes Affect The Distribution of Organisms

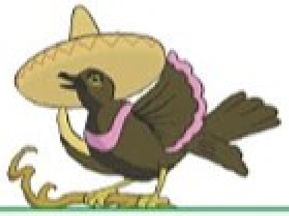
Environmental changes can cause the distribution of organisms to change. A change in distribution means a change in where an organism lives. Environmental changes that can affect organisms in this way include:

1) A change in the **AVAILABILITY** of **WATER**. For example:

> The distribution of some animal and plant species in the tropics changes between the wet and the dry seasons — i.e. the times of year where there is more or less rainfall, and so more or less water available. E.g. each year in Africa, large numbers of giant wildebeest migrate, moving north and then back south as the rainfall patterns change.

2) A change in the **TEMPERATURE**. For example:

> The distribution of bird species in Germany is changing because of a rise in average temperature. E.g. the European bee-eater bird is a Mediterranean species but it's now present in parts of Germany.



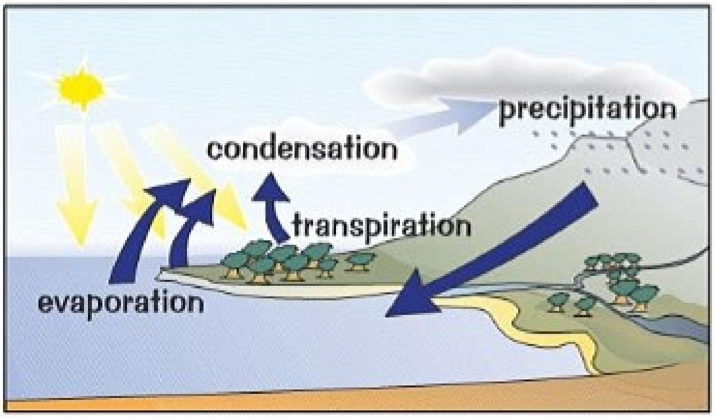
3) A change in the composition of **ATMOSPHERIC GASES**. For example:

> The distribution of some species changes in areas where there is more air pollution. E.g. some species of lichen can't grow in areas where sulfur dioxide is given out by certain industrial processes.

These environmental changes can be caused by seasonal factors, geographic factors or human interaction. For example, the rise in average temperature (see point 2 above) is due to global warming, which has been caused by human activity (see pages 116-117).

The Water Cycle Means Water is Endlessly Recycled

The water here on planet Earth is constantly recycled.
Strange but true...



1) Energy from the Sun makes water evaporate from the land and sea, turning it into water vapour. Water also evaporates from plants — this is known as transpiration (see p.43).
2) The warm water vapour is carried upwards (as warm air rises). When it gets higher up it cools and condenses to form clouds.
3) Water falls from the clouds as precipitation (usually rain, but sometimes snow or hail) onto land, where it provides fresh water for plants and animals.
4) It then drains into the sea, before the whole process starts again.

Come on out, it's only a little water cycle, it won't hurt you...

Because organisms rely on the biotic and abiotic factors affecting the environment (see page 107) it's no wonder that when the factors change, it affects where organisms live. Some of the non-living (abiotic) factors that affect us are in a constant cycle — read about the water cycle here and then the carbon cycle on the next page.

Q1 Give two environmental changes that can affect the distribution of living organisms. [2 marks]

Q2 a) In the water cycle, how does water move from the land into the air? [1 mark]
b) How does the water cycle benefit plants and animals? [1 mark]

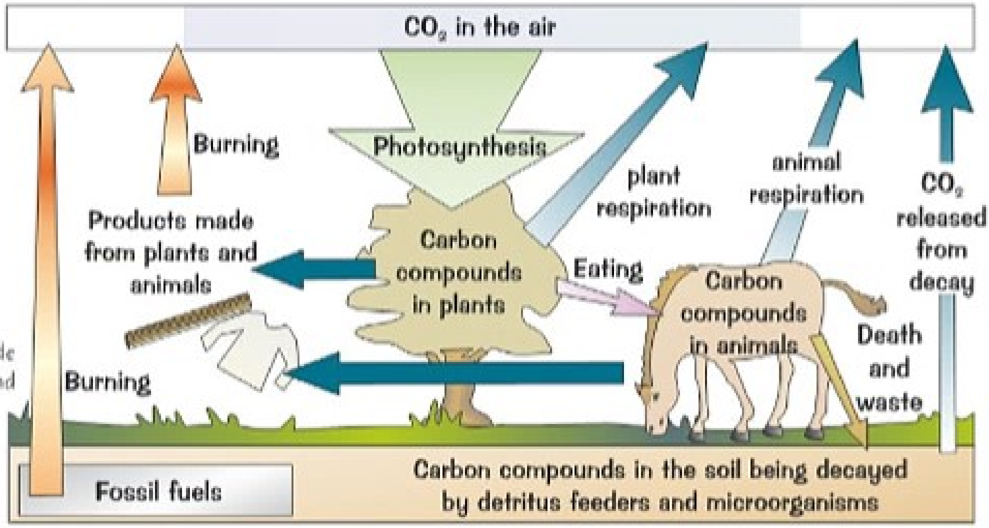
The Carbon Cycle

Recycling may be a buzz word for us but it's old school for nature. All the nutrients in our environment are constantly being recycled — there's a nice balance between what goes in and what goes out again.

Elements are Cycled Back to the Start of the Food Chain by Decay

1) Living things are made of materials they take from the world around them. E.g. plants turn elements like carbon, oxygen, hydrogen and nitrogen from the soil and the air into the complex compounds (carbohydrates, proteins and fats) that make up living organisms. These get passed up the food chain.
2) These materials are returned to the environment in waste products, or when the organisms die and decay.
3) Materials decay because they're broken down (digested) by microorganisms. This happens faster in warm, moist, aerobic (oxygen rich) conditions because microorganisms are more active in these conditions.
4) Decay puts the stuff that plants need to grow (e.g. mineral ions — see point 1) back into the soil.
5) In a stable community, the materials that are taken out of the soil and used by plants etc. are balanced by those that are put back in. There's a constant cycle happening.

The Constant Cycling of Carbon is called the Carbon Cycle



CO_2 in the air
Burning
Photosynthesis
plant respiration
animal respiration
CO_2 released from decay
Products made from plants and animals
Carbon compounds in plants
Eating
Carbon compounds in animals
Death and waste
Burning
Fossil fuels
Carbon compounds in the soil being decayed by detritus feeders and microorganisms

Fossil fuels are made of decayed plant and animal matter.

That can look a bit complicated at first, but it's actually pretty simple:

1) CO_2 is removed from the atmosphere by green plants and algae during photosynthesis. The carbon is used to make glucose, which can be turned into carbohydrates, fats and proteins that make up the bodies of the plants and algae.
2) When the plants and algae respire, some carbon is returned to the atmosphere as CO_2.
3) When the plants and algae are eaten by animals, some carbon becomes part of the fats and proteins in their bodies. The carbon then moves through the food chain.
4) When the animals respire, some carbon is returned to the atmosphere as CO_2.
5) When plants, algae and animals die, other animals (called detritus feeders) and microorganisms feed on their remains. When these organisms respire, CO_2 is returned to the atmosphere.
6) Animals also produce waste that is broken down by detritus feeders and microorganisms.
7) The combustion (burning) of wood and fossil fuels also releases CO_2 back into the air.
8) So the carbon (and energy) is constantly being cycled — from the air, through food chains (via plants, algae and animals, and detritus feeders and microorganisms) and eventually back out into the air again.

The energy that green plants and algae get from photosynthesis is transferred up the food chain.

What goes around comes around...

Carbon is very important for living things — it's the basis for all the organic molecules in our bodies.

Q1 What causes materials to decay? [1 mark]

Q2 Describe how carbon is removed from the atmosphere in the carbon cycle. [1 mark]

Decay

Microorganisms break down plant and animal material and waste to get energy. Not my idea of a good meal, but to them it's positively gourmet. This process of decay can be really useful to us — read on...

Decomposition Can Produce Compost

Compost is decomposed organic matter (e.g. food waste) that is used as a natural fertiliser for crops and garden plants. Farmers and gardeners try to provide the ideal conditions for quick decay to make compost.

The Rate of Decay is Affected by Several Factors

Microorganisms such as bacteria and fungi, as well as detritus feeders (p.113) are the critters responsible for decomposition (decay). You'd think that organisms that feed on dead stuff wouldn't be that picky, but they're a bit like Goldilocks — everything has to be just right for them to work at their best.

1) TEMPERATURE — Warmer temperatures make things decompose quicker because they increase the rate that the enzymes (see p.28) involved in decomposition work at. If it's too hot though, decomposition slows down or stops because the enzymes are destroyed and the organisms die. Really cold temperatures slow the rate of decomposition too.
2) OXYGEN AVAILABILITY — Many organisms need oxygen to respire, which they need to do to survive. The microorganisms involved in anaerobic decay (see below) don't need oxygen though.
3) WATER AVAILABILITY — Decay takes place faster in moist environments because the organisms involved in decay need water to carry out biological processes.
4) NUMBER OF DECAY ORGANISMS — The more microorganisms and detritus feeders there are, the faster decomposition happens.

Biogas is Made by Anaerobic Decay of Waste Material

1) Biogas is mainly made up of methane, which can be burned as a fuel.
2) Lots of different microorganisms are used to produce biogas. They decay plant and animal waste anaerobically (without oxygen). This type of decay produces methane gas. Sludge waste from, for example, sewage works or sugar factories, is used to make biogas on a large scale.
3) Biogas is made in a simple fermenter called a digester or generator.
4) Biogas generators need to be kept at a constant temperature to keep the microorganisms respiring away.
5) Biogas can't be stored as a liquid (it needs too high a pressure), so it has to be used straight away — for heating, cooking, lighting, or to power a turbine to generate electricity.

Not All Biogas Generators Are the Same

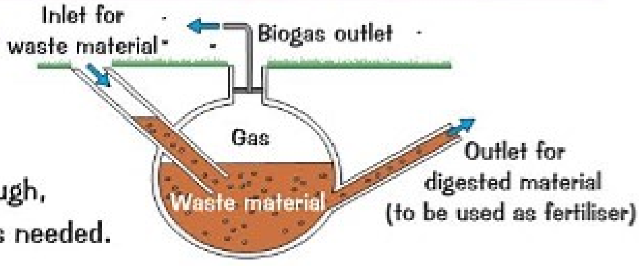
There are two main types of biogas generator — batch generators and continuous generators.

Batch generators make biogas in small batches. They're manually loaded up with waste, which is left to digest, and the by-products are cleared away at the end of each session.

Continuous generators make biogas all the time. Waste is continuously fed in, and biogas is produced at a steady rate. Continuous generators are more suited to large-scale biogas projects.

The diagram on the right shows a simple biogas generator. Whether it's a continuous or batch generator, it needs to have the following:

1) an inlet for waste material to be put in,
2) an outlet for the digested material to be removed through,
3) an outlet so that the biogas can be piped to where it is needed.



What a rotten subject...

Wow... So we can use poo (and other waste) to make a fuel. It's pretty gross, but I reckon it could come in handy.

Q1 Other than temperature, give three factors that affect the rate of decay. [3 marks]

Investigating Decay

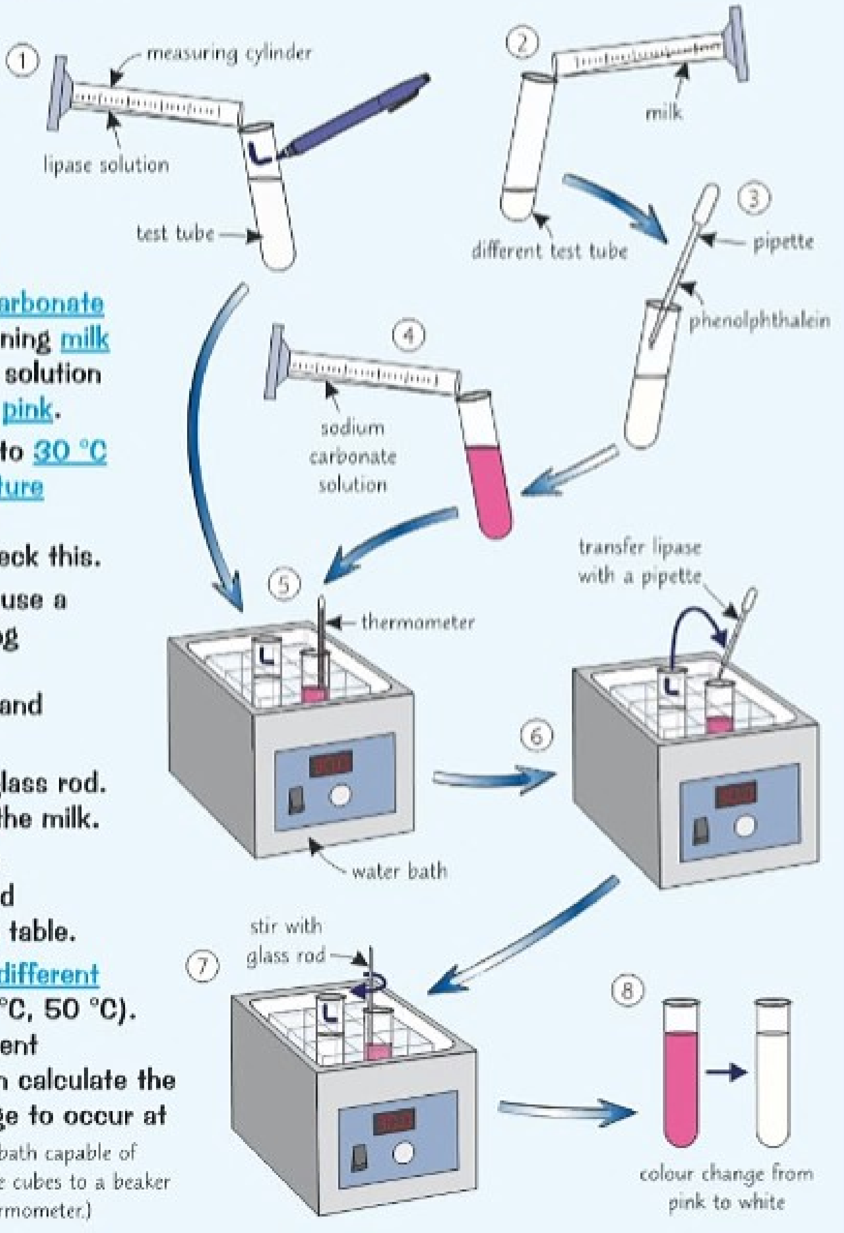
PRACTICAL

It's time for a practical. I hope you're not looking forward to a milky brew, because this might just put you off.

You Can Investigate the Effect of Temperature on the Rate of Decay

You can investigate decay by observing the action of the enzyme lipase on a sample of milk that has been made alkaline. When the lipase breaks the milk down, the pH of the milk decreases.

This practical looks at how temperature affects the rate of decay. In it, an indicator dye called phenolphthalein is used — it has a pink colour when the pH is around 10, but becomes colourless when the pH falls below 8.3. Here's what you need to do:



1) Measure out 5 cm³ of lipase solution and add it to a test tube. Label this tube with an 'L' for lipase.
2) Measure out 5 cm³ of milk and add it to a different test tube.
3) Add 5 drops of phenolphthalein indicator to the tube containing milk.
4) Then measure out 7 cm³ of sodium carbonate solution and add it to the tube containing milk and phenolphthalein. This makes the solution in the tube alkaline, so it should turn pink.
5) Put both tubes into a water bath set to 30 °C and leave them to reach the temperature of the water bath. You could stick a thermometer into the milk tube to check this.
6) Once the tubes have reached 30 °C, use a calibrated dropping pipette (a dropping pipette with a scale) to put 1 cm³ of the lipase solution into the milk tube and start a stopwatch straight away.
7) Stir the contents of the tube with a glass rod. The enzyme will start to decompose the milk.
8) As soon as the solution loses its pink colour, stop the stopwatch and record how long the colour change took in a table.
9) Repeat the experiment at a range of different temperatures (e.g. 10 °C, 20 °C, 40 °C, 50 °C). Make sure you carry out the experiment three times at each temperature, then calculate the mean time taken for the colour change to occur at each temperature. (You can make a water bath capable of temperatures below room temperature by adding ice cubes to a beaker of water and measuring the temperature with a thermometer.)
10) You can use your results to calculate the rate of decay using this formula. The units will be s^{-1} since rate is given per unit of time.

$$\text{Rate} = \frac{1000}{\text{time}}$$

You've met this formula before, on page 29.

You could also investigate decomposition in your gym bag...

I found that leaving my wet PE kit in my gym bag sure made for some interesting moulds... and smells.

Q1 Ted was investigating decay using the above method. It took 280 seconds for the solution to lose its pink colour. Calculate the rate of decay. Give your answer in s^{-1}. [1 mark]

Biodiversity and Waste Management

Unfortunately, human activity can negatively affect the planet and its variety of life. Read on for bad news...

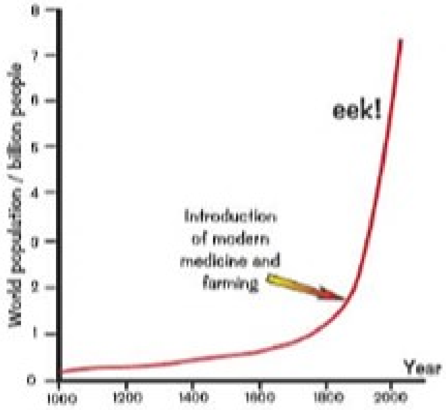
Earth's Biodiversity is Important

Biodiversity is the variety of different species of organisms on Earth, or within an ecosystem.

1) High biodiversity is important. It makes sure that ecosystems (see p.106) are stable because different species depend on each other for things like shelter and food. Different species can also help to maintain the right physical environment for each other (e.g. the acidity of the soil).
2) For the human species to survive, it's important that a good level of biodiversity is maintained.
3) Lots of human actions, including waste production (see below) and deforestation (see p.118), as well as global warming (see next page) are reducing biodiversity. However, it's only recently that we've started taking measures to stop this from continuing.

There are Over Seven Billion People in the World...

1) The population of the world is currently rising very quickly, and it's not slowing down — look at the graph...
2) This is mostly due to modern medicine and farming methods, which have reduced the number of people dying from disease and hunger.
3) This is great for all of us humans, but it means we're having a bigger effect on the environment we live in.



...With Increasing Demands on the Environment

When the Earth's population was much smaller, the effects of human activity were usually small and local. Nowadays though, our actions can have a far more widespread effect.

1) Our increasing population puts pressure on the environment, as we take the resources we need to survive.
2) But people around the world are also demanding a higher standard of living (and so demand luxuries to make life more comfortable — cars, computers, etc.). So we use more raw materials (e.g. oil to make plastics), but we also use more energy for the manufacturing processes. This all means we're taking more and more resources from the environment more and more quickly.
3) Unfortunately, many raw materials are being used up quicker than they're being replaced. So if we carry on like we are, one day we're going to run out.

We're Also Producing More Waste

As we make more and more things we produce more and more waste, including waste chemicals. And unless this waste is properly handled, more harmful pollution will be caused. Pollution affects water, land and air and kills plants and animals, reducing biodiversity.

Water Sewage and toxic chemicals from industry can pollute lakes, rivers and oceans, affecting the plants and animals that rely on them for survival (including humans). And the chemicals used on land (e.g. fertilisers, pesticides and herbicides) can be washed into water.

Land We use toxic chemicals for farming (e.g. pesticides and herbicides). We also bury nuclear waste underground, and we dump a lot of household waste in landfill sites.

Air Smoke and acidic gases released into the atmosphere can pollute the air, e.g. sulfur dioxide can cause acid rain.

More people, more mess, less space, fewer resources...

Biodiversity's a useful thing, but the increasing rate of species extinction means that it's being reduced every day.

Q1 What is meant by the term 'biodiversity'? [1 mark]

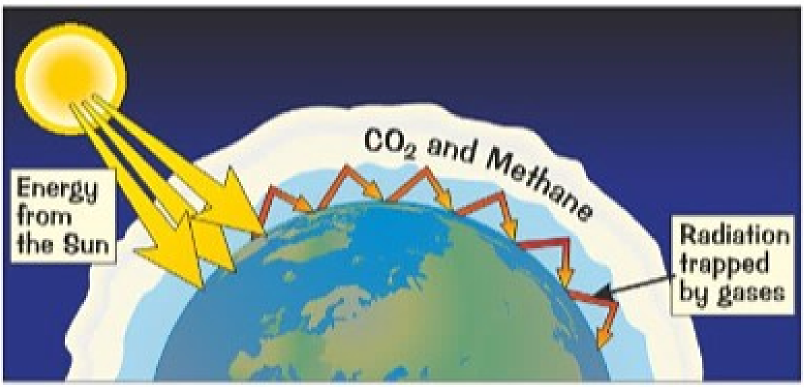
Global Warming

The Earth is getting warmer. Climate scientists are now trying to work out what the effects of global warming might be — sadly, it's not as simple as everyone having nicer summers.

Carbon Dioxide and Methane Trap Energy from the Sun

This is what happens in a greenhouse. The Sun shines in, and the glass helps keeps some of the energy in.

1) The temperature of the Earth is a balance between the energy it gets from the Sun and the energy it radiates back out into space.
2) Gases in the atmosphere naturally act like an insulating layer. They absorb most of the energy that would normally be radiated out into space, and re-radiate it in all directions (including back towards the Earth). This increases the temperature of the planet.
3) If this didn't happen, then at night there'd be nothing to keep any energy in, and we'd quickly get very cold indeed. But recently we've started to worry that this effect is getting a bit out of hand...
4) There are several different gases in the atmosphere which help keep the energy in. They're called "greenhouse gases", and the main ones whose levels we worry about are carbon dioxide (CO_2) and methane — because the levels of these two gases are rising quite sharply.
5) The Earth is gradually heating up because of the increasing levels of greenhouse gases — this is global warming. Global warming is a type of climate change and causes other types of climate change, e.g. changing rainfall patterns.



The Consequences of Global Warming Could be Pretty Serious

There are several reasons to be worried about global warming. Here are a few:

1) Higher temperatures cause seawater to expand and ice to melt, causing the sea level to rise. It has risen a little bit over the last 100 years. If it keeps rising it'll be bad news for people and animals living in low-lying places. It will lead to flooding, resulting in the loss of habitats (where organisms live).
2) The distribution of many wild animal and plant species may change as temperatures increase and the amount of rainfall changes in different areas. Some species may become more widely distributed, e.g. species that need warmer temperatures may spread further as the conditions they thrive in exist over a wider area. Other species may become less widely distributed, e.g. species that need cooler temperatures may have smaller ranges as the conditions they thrive in exist over a smaller area.
3) There could be changes in migration patterns, e.g. some birds may migrate further north, as more northern areas are getting warmer.
4) Biodiversity (see p.116) could be reduced if some species are unable to survive a change in the climate, so become extinct.

The greenhouse effect — when you start growing into a tomato...

Global warming is rarely out of the news. Most scientists accept that it's happening and that human activity has caused most of the recent warming. However, they don't know exactly what the effects will be.

Q1 Explain how global warming could lead to the loss of low-lying habitats. [3 marks]

Deforestation and Land Use

Trees and peat bogs trap carbon dioxide and lock it up. The problems start when it escapes...

Humans Use Lots of Land for Lots of Purposes

1) We use land for things like building, quarrying, farming and dumping waste.
2) This means that there's less land available for other organisms.
3) Sometimes, the way we use land has a bad effect on the environment — for example, if it requires deforestation or the destruction of habitats like peat bogs and other areas of peat.

Deforestation Means Chopping Down Trees

Deforestation is the cutting down of forests. This causes big problems when it's done on a large-scale, such as cutting down rainforests in tropical areas. It's done for various reasons, including:

- To clear land for farming (e.g. cattle or rice crops) to provide more food.
- To grow crops from which biofuels based on ethanol can be produced.

Deforestation Can Cause Many Problems

More CO_2 in the atmosphere causes global warming (see previous page), which leads to climate change.

LESS CARBON DIOXIDE TAKEN IN

1) Cutting down loads of trees means that the amount of carbon dioxide removed from the atmosphere during photosynthesis is reduced.
2) Trees 'lock up' some of the carbon that they absorb during photosynthesis in their wood, which can remove it from the atmosphere for hundreds of years. Removing trees means that less is locked up.

MORE CARBON DIOXIDE IN THE ATMOSPHERE

1) Carbon dioxide is released when trees are burnt to clear land. (Carbon in wood doesn't contribute to atmospheric pollution until it's released by burning.)
2) Microorganisms feeding on bits of dead wood release carbon dioxide as a waste product of respiration.

LESS BIODIVERSITY

1) Biodiversity (p.116) is the variety of different species — the more species, the greater the biodiversity.
2) Habitats like forests can contain a huge number of different species of plants and animals, so when they are destroyed there is a danger of many species becoming extinct — biodiversity is reduced.

Destroying Peat Bogs Adds More CO_2 to the Atmosphere

1) Bogs are areas of land that are acidic and waterlogged. Plants that live in bogs don't fully decay when they die, because there's not enough oxygen. The partly-rotted plants gradually build up to form peat.
2) So the carbon in the plants is stored in the peat instead of being released into the atmosphere.
3) However, peat bogs are often drained so that the area can be used as farmland, or the peat is cut up and dried to use as fuel. It's also sold to gardeners as compost. Peat is being used faster than it forms.
4) When peat is drained, it comes into more contact with air and some microorganisms start to decompose it. When these microorganisms respire, they use oxygen and release carbon dioxide, contributing to global warming (see the previous page).
5) Carbon dioxide is also released when peat is burned as a fuel.
6) Destroying the bogs also destroys (or reduces the area of) the habitats of some of the animals, plants and microorganisms that live there, so reduces biodiversity.

Pete Boggs Demolition Ltd — the name in habitat destruction...

So removing trees and peat results in more atmospheric CO_2, which contributes to global warming. Bad times.

Q1 Suggest why deforestation can result in a higher CO_2 concentration in the atmosphere. [3 marks]

Maintaining Ecosystems and Biodiversity

It's really important that biodiversity is maintained, but other factors also have to be taken into account.

Programmes Can be Set Up to Protect Ecosystems and Biodiversity

It's important that biodiversity is maintained at a high enough level to make sure that ecosystems are stable (see page 106). In some areas, programmes have been set up by concerned citizens and scientists to minimise damage by human activities (see p.116) to ecosystems and biodiversity. Here are a few examples:

1) Breeding programmes have been set up to help prevent endangered species from becoming extinct. These are where animals are bred in captivity to make sure the species survives if it dies out in the wild. Individuals can sometimes be released into the wild to boost or re-establish a population.
2) Programmes to protect and regenerate rare habitats like mangroves, heathland and coral reefs have been started. Protecting these habitats helps to protect the species that live there — preserving the ecosystem and biodiversity in the area.
3) There are programmes to reintroduce hedgerows and field margins around fields on farms where only a single type of crop is grown. Field margins are areas of land around the edges of fields where wild flowers and grasses are left to grow. Hedgerows and field margins provide a habitat for a wider variety of organisms than could survive in a single crop habitat.
4) Some governments have introduced regulations and programmes to reduce the level of deforestation taking place and the amount of carbon dioxide being released into the atmosphere by businesses. This could reduce the increase of global warming (see page 117).
5) People are encouraged to recycle to reduce the amount of waste that gets dumped in landfill sites. This could reduce the amount of land taken over for landfill, leaving ecosystems in place.

Conflicting Pressures Can Affect How Biodiversity is Maintained

Sadly for noble biodiversity warriors, maintaining biodiversity isn't as simple as you would hope. There are lots of conflicting pressures that have to be taken into account. For example:

1) Protecting biodiversity costs money. For example, governments sometimes pay farmers a subsidy to reintroduce hedgerows and field margins to their land. It can also cost money to keep a watch on whether the programmes and regulations designed to maintain biodiversity are being followed. There can be conflict between protecting biodiversity and saving money — money may be prioritised for other things.
2) Protecting biodiversity may come at a cost to local people's livelihood. For example, reducing the amount of deforestation is great for biodiversity, but the people who were previously employed in the tree-felling industry could be left unemployed. This could affect the local economy if people move away with their family to find work.
3) There can be conflict between protecting biodiversity and protecting our food security. Sometimes certain organisms are seen as pests by farmers (e.g. locusts and foxes) and are killed to protect crops and livestock so that more food can be produced. As a result, however, the food chain and biodiversity can be affected.
4) Development is important, but it can affect the environment. Many people want to protect biodiversity in the face of development, but sometimes land is in such high demand that previously untouched land with high biodiversity has to be used for development, e.g. for housing developments on the edge of towns, or for new agricultural land in developing countries.

Revision or sleep — now that's a conflicting pressure...

Like many situations in ecology, maintaining biodiversity isn't black and white. There are lots of factors to take into account before decisions on the best way to go forward can be made.

Q1 Give an example of how biodiversity can be increased in areas that farm single crops. [2 marks]

Q2 How could wild populations of endangered species be preserved by breeding programmes? [2 marks]

Trophic Levels

And now for something slightly different... The word 'trophic' comes from the Greek word trophe meaning 'nourishment'. This page must contain something about food then. Probably worth reading on I reckon...

Food Chains Can be Divided into Trophic Levels

1) You might recognise some of this stuff about food chains from page 109. Unfortunately, now you need to learn a bit more about it. Enter the exciting world of trophic levels.
2) Trophic levels are the different stages of a food chain. They consist of one or more organisms that perform a specific role in the food chain.
3) Trophic levels are named after their location in the food chain using numbers. The first level is called trophic level 1. Each level after that is numbered in order based on how far along the food chain the organisms in the trophic level are. For example, the organisms second in line in the food chain belong to trophic level 2, organisms third in line are in trophic level 3, and so on.

Trophic Level 1 Contains Producers

1) Producers are the organisms at the starting point of a food chain, e.g. plants and algae.
2) They're called producers because they make their own food by photosynthesis using energy from the Sun.

Trophic Level 2 Contains Primary Consumers

1) Herbivores that eat the plants and algae are primary consumers.
2) Herbivores eat only plants and algae.

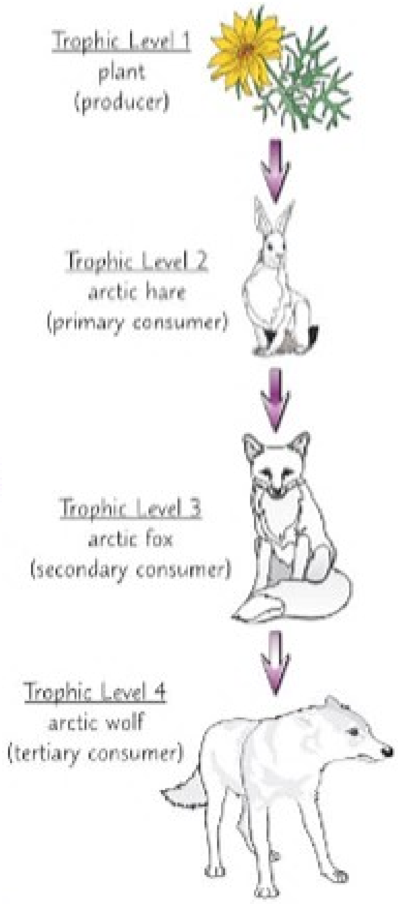
Trophic Level 3 Contains Secondary Consumers

1) Carnivores that eat the primary consumers are secondary consumers.
2) Carnivores are meat eaters.

Trophic Level 4 Contains Tertiary Consumers

1) Carnivores that eat other carnivores (the secondary consumers) are tertiary consumers.
2) Carnivores that have no predators are at the top of the food chain, so they're always in the highest trophic level. They're known as apex predators.

There can be more than four trophic levels in a food chain, but there are only usually 4 or 5 because so much energy is lost from the food chain at each trophic level (see p.122).



Decomposers Break Down Uneaten Remains and Waste

1) Decomposers such as bacteria and fungi play an important role in ecosystems.
2) They decompose any dead plant or animal material left in an environment.
3) They can do this by secreting (releasing) enzymes that break the dead stuff down into small soluble food molecules. These then diffuse into the microorganisms.

This process also releases nutrients into the environment, which the producers need in order to grow.

G, G, G, E♭, F, F, F, D — sorry, just decomposing Beethoven's 5th...

So, trophic level is just the fancy term for a stage in a food chain. Each trophic level always contains organisms that perform the same role. For example, the organisms in trophic level 3 are always the secondary consumers. And don't forget about those environmental champions, the decomposers. They clean up after everyone else.

Q1 Explain how decomposers break down dead material in an environment. [1 mark]

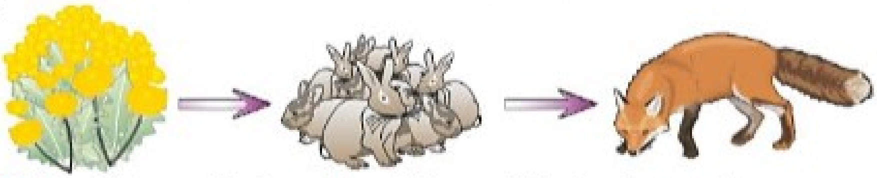
Pyramids of Biomass

OK, I'll be straight with you. This isn't the most interesting page in the world, but hey — life's like that.

Pyramids of Biomass Show the Relative Mass of Each Trophic Level

There's less energy and less biomass every time you move up a stage (trophic level) in a food chain. There are usually fewer organisms every time you move up a level too. Let's revisit our woodland friends from p.109 as an example:

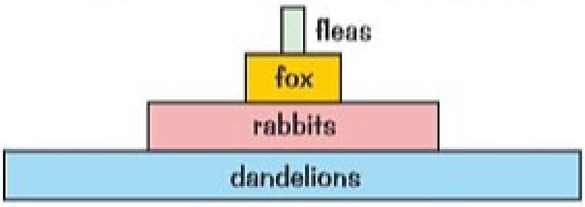
Biomass just means the mass of living material.



100 dandelions... feed... 10 rabbits... which feed... one fox.

This isn't always true though — for example, if 500 fleas are feeding on the fox, the number of organisms has increased as you move up to that stage in the food chain. So a better way to look at the food chain is often to think about biomass instead of number of organisms. You can use information about biomass to construct a pyramid of biomass to represent the food chain:

1) Each bar on a pyramid of biomass shows the relative mass of living material at a trophic level — basically how much all the organisms at each level would "weigh" if you put them all together.
2) So the one fox above would have a big biomass and the hundreds of fleas would have a very small biomass. Biomass pyramids are practically always pyramid-shaped:

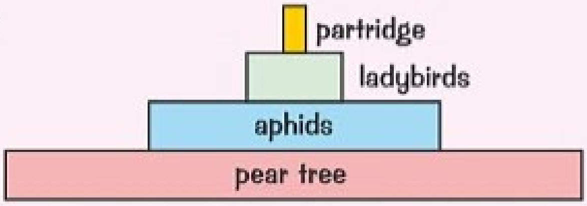


The big bar along the bottom of the pyramid shows trophic level 1. It always represents the producer (e.g. plants or algae). The next bar will be the primary consumer (the animal that eats the producer), then the secondary consumer (the animal that eats the primary consumer) and so on up the food chain. Easy.

Pyramids of Biomass Give You Information About Food Chains

1) It's easy to look at pyramids of biomass and explain what they show about the food chain — just remember, the biomass at each stage should be drawn to scale. For example:
2) If you're given actual numbers, you can use them to draw bars of the correct scale. Don't forget that the order of organisms in the pyramid must follow the order of the food chain, and each bar must be labelled.

E.g.



Even if you know nothing about the natural world, you're probably aware that a tree is quite a bit bigger than an aphid. So what's going on here is that lots (probably thousands) of aphids are feeding on a great big tree. Quite a lot of ladybirds are then eating the aphids, and a few partridges are eating the ladybirds. Biomass and energy are still decreasing as you go up the levels — it's just that one tree can have a very big biomass, and can fix a lot of the Sun's energy using all those leaves.

Constructing pyramids is a breeze — just ask the Egyptians...

There are actually a couple of exceptions where pyramids of biomass aren't quite pyramid-shaped. It happens when the producer has a very short life but reproduces loads, like with plankton at certain times of year. But it's very rare, so forget I ever mentioned it. Sorry. When you're done here, do something fun like sing to a squirrel.

Q1 What does each bar on a pyramid of biomass represent? [1 mark]

Biomass Transfer

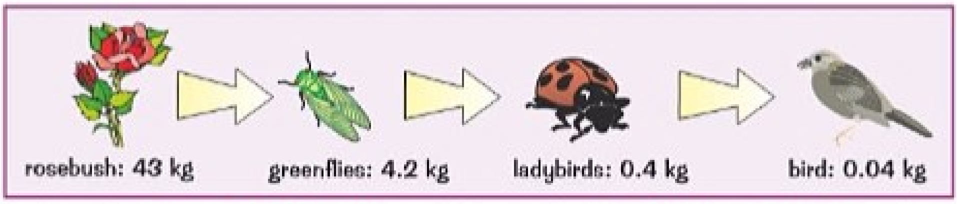
Great, steak for dinner — some biomass from a cow to help you grow. But you'll need some of that biomass for respiration, so you can move about and revise. And some will be indigestible. This is how biomass is lost...

Biomass is Lost Between Each Trophic Level

1) Energy from the Sun is the source of energy for nearly all life on Earth.
2) Producers, such as green plants and algae, use energy transferred by light from the Sun to make food (glucose) during photosynthesis. Of the energy that hits these producers, only about 1% is transferred for photosynthesis.
3) Some of the glucose is used by the plants and algae to make biological molecules. These biological molecules make up the plant's biomass — the mass of living material. Biomass stores energy.
4) Biomass is transferred through a food chain in an ecosystem when organisms eat other organisms. However, not much biomass gets transferred from one trophic level to the next. In fact, only about 10% of the biomass is passed on to the next level.
5) Biomass is lost between the levels for a few different reasons:

- Organisms don't always eat every single part of the organism they're consuming. For example, some material that makes up plants and animals is inedible (e.g. bone). This means that not all the biomass can be passed to the next stage of the food chain.
- Organisms don't absorb all of the stuff in the food they ingest (take in). The stuff that they don't absorb is egested (released) as faeces (ahem... pooped out, to you and me).
- Some of the biomass taken in is converted into other substances that are lost as waste. For example, organisms use a lot of glucose (obtained from the biomass) in respiration to provide energy for movement and keeping warm, etc. rather than to make more biomass. This process produces lots of waste carbon dioxide and water as by-products. Urea is another waste substance, which is released in urine with water when the proteins in the biomass are broken down.

You Can Calculate the Efficiency of Biomass Transfer



1) The numbers show the amount of biomass available to the next level. So 43 kg is the amount of biomass available to the greenflies, and 4.2 kg is the amount available to the ladybirds.
2) You can work out how much biomass has been lost at each level by taking away the biomass that is available at that level from the biomass that was available at the previous level. For example:
   Biomass lost at 1st trophic level = 43 kg – 4.2 kg = 38.8 kg.
3) You can also calculate the efficiency of biomass transfer between trophic levels:

$$\text{efficiency} = \frac{\text{biomass transferred to the next level}}{\text{biomass available at the previous level}} \times 100$$

So at the 1st trophic level, efficiency of biomass transfer = 4.2 kg ÷ 43 kg × 100 = 9.8% efficient.

Ah ah ah ah stayin' alive, stayin' alive...

The Bee Gees were definitely on to something — staying alive is important, but it does require a lot of energy. Remember though that hardly any of this energy makes it to the next level in the food chain — most is lost.

Q1 Give two ways that biomass is lost between trophic levels. [2 marks]

Q2 Calculate the percentage efficiency of biomass transfer between some large fish with 995 kg of available biomass and a shark with 110 kg of available biomass. [1 mark]

Food Security and Farming

There are more than 7 billion people on our planet and they all need feeding, so maintaining our food supply is important. We need to make sure that we use sustainable methods of food production wherever we can.

Lots of Factors Affect Food Security

Food security is having enough food to feed a population.
There's a wide range of things that can threaten food security. For example:

1) The world population keeps increasing, with the birth rate of many developing countries rising quickly.
2) As diets in developed countries change, the demand for certain foods to be imported from developing countries can increase. This means that already scarce food resources can become more scarce.
3) Farming can be affected by new pests and pathogens (e.g. bacteria and viruses) or changes in the environmental conditions (e.g. a lack of rain). This can result in the loss of crops and livestock, and can lead to widespread famine.
4) The high input costs of farming (e.g. the price of seeds, machinery and livestock) can make it too expensive for people in some countries to start or maintain food production, meaning that there sometimes aren't enough people producing food in these areas to feed the people.
5) In some parts of the world, there are conflicts that affect the availability of food and water.

Sustainable methods of food production are needed so that enough food can be made to feed everyone now and in the future. Sustainable production means making enough food without using resources faster than they renew.

Overfishing is Decreasing Fish Stocks

1) Fish stocks are declining in the oceans because we're fishing so much.
2) This means there's less fish for us to eat, the ocean's food chains are affected and some species of fish may disappear altogether in some areas — for example, cod are at risk of disappearing from the north west Atlantic.
3) To tackle this problem, we need to maintain fish stocks at a level where the fish continue to breed. This is sustainable food production. Fish stocks can be maintained (conserved) in these ways:

FISHING QUOTAS — there are limits on the number and size of fish that can be caught in certain areas. This prevents certain species from being overfished.

NET SIZE — there are different limits of the mesh size of the fish net, depending on what's being fished. This is to reduce the number of 'unwanted' and discarded fish — the ones that are accidently caught, e.g. shrimp caught along with cod. Using a bigger mesh size will let the 'unwanted' species escape. It also means that younger fish will slip through the net, allowing them to reach breeding age.

Food Production Can be Made More Efficient

Limiting the movement of livestock and keeping them in a temperature-controlled environment reduces the transfer of energy from livestock to the environment. This makes farming more efficient as the animals use less energy moving around and controlling their own body temperature. This means that more energy is available for growth, so more food can be produced from the same input of resources.

1) Livestock like calves and chickens can be factory farmed. This involves raising them in small pens.
2) Fish can also be factory farmed in cages where their movement is restricted.
3) Some animals are also fed high-protein food to further increase their growth.

Factory farmed chickens are also called battery chickens.

Some factory farming methods are controversial. Because the animals are kept so close together, disease can spread between them easily. There are also ethical objections, as some people think that making animals live in unnatural and uncomfortable conditions is cruel.

Fishermen are just too effishent...

Food security is seriously important, but there are lots of issues that threaten it. There are ways to reduce the threats though. Make sure you're familiar with the stuff on this page and your exam mark security may be vastly improved.

Q1 Explain how food production from livestock farming can be made more efficient. [4 marks]

Biotechnology

Biotechnology is where living things and biological processes are used and manipulated to produce a useful product. It's a wide and rapidly expanding field that could be really handy if used to its full potential.

Mycoprotein — Food from Fungi

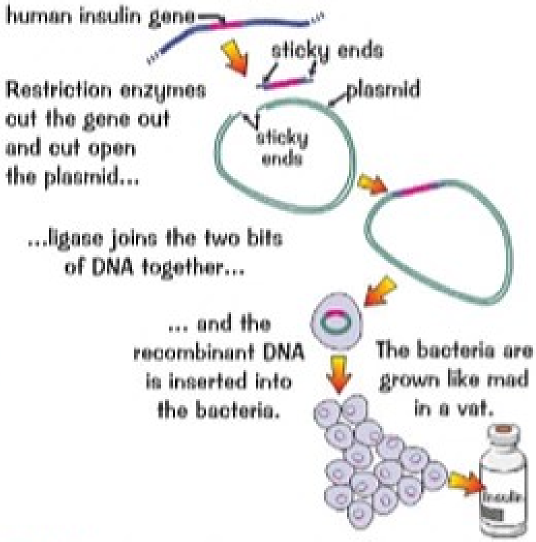
1) Using modern biotechnology techniques, large amounts of microorganisms can be cultured (grown) industrially under controlled conditions in large vats for use as a food source.
2) Mycoprotein is used to make high-protein meat substitutes for vegetarian meals, e.g. Quorn™.
3) It's made from the fungus *Fusarium*, which is grown in aerobic conditions on glucose syrup, which it uses as food.
4) The fungal biomass is harvested and purified to produce the mycoprotein.

Aerobic conditions are where oxygen is present.

Bacteria can be Engineered to Produce Human Insulin

Genetic engineering is transferring a useful gene from one organism to another (see page 99). Bacteria can be genetically engineered to make human insulin:

1) A plasmid (a loop of DNA) is removed from a bacterium.
2) The insulin gene is cut out of a human chromosome using a restriction enzyme. Restriction enzymes recognise specific sequences of DNA and cut the DNA at these points. The cut leaves one of the DNA strands with unpaired bases — this is called a 'sticky end'.
3) The plasmid is cut open using the same restriction enzyme — leaving the same sticky ends.
4) The plasmid and the human insulin gene are mixed together.
5) Ligase (an enzyme) is added. This joins the sticky ends together to produce recombinant DNA (two different bits of DNA stuck together).


human insulin gene
sticky ends
Restriction enzymes cut the gene out and cut open the plasmid...
plasmid
sticky ends
...ligase joins the two bits of DNA together...
... and the recombinant DNA is inserted into the bacteria.
The bacteria are grown like mad in a vat.
Insulin

6) The recombinant DNA is inserted into a bacterium.
7) The modified bacterium is grown in a vat under controlled conditions. You end up with millions of bacteria that produce insulin. The insulin can be harvested and purified to treat people with diabetes.

Crops Can be Genetically Modified

Many people in the world today don't have enough food to eat (or the diet they have isn't varied). This mostly happens in developing countries — like those in Africa and parts of Asia.

Biotechnology could help...

1) Genetically modified (GM) crops can be produced that are resistant to pests — improving crop yields.
2) They can be genetically modified to grow better in drought conditions — again improving crop yields.
3) And some crops can be modified to provide more nutritional value, e.g. 'Golden Rice' has been genetically engineered to produce a chemical that's converted in the body to vitamin A.

...But not everyone agrees

1) Many people argue that people go hungry because they can't afford to buy food, not because there isn't any food about. So they argue that you need to tackle poverty first.
2) There are fears that countries may become dependent on companies who sell GM seeds.
3) Sometimes poor soil is the main reason why crops fail, and even GM crops won't survive.

I'll have a fungus sandwich with a side of GM rice please...

Genetic modification is a powerful biotechnological tool. It could hold the solution to a wide range of problems.

Q1 What is 'Golden Rice'? [2 marks]

Revision Questions for Topic 7

That's Topic 7 done with. I bet you're right in the mood for a long list of revision question now. You're in luck.

- Try these questions and tick off each one when you get it right.
- When you've done all the questions under a heading and are completely happy with it, tick it off.

Competition, Abiotic and Biotic Factors, and Adaptations (p.106-108) ☐

1) Define 'habitat'. ☐
2) What things do animals compete for in an ecosystem? ☐
3) What are biotic and abiotic factors? ☐
4) What are functional adaptations? ☐

Food Chains (p.109) ☐

5) What do food chains always start with? ☐
6) Explain what happens to the population size of a predator if its prey becomes more common in an ecosystem. ☐

Quadrats and Transects (p.110-111) ☐

7) Explain how a quadrat can be used to investigate the distribution of clover plants in two areas. ☐
8) Suggest why you might use a transect when investigating the distribution of organisms. ☐

Environmental Change, and The Water and Carbon Cycles (p.112-113) ☐

9) How might a change in the availability of water affect the distribution of species? ☐
10) When water vapour cools and condenses in the atmosphere, what does it change into? ☐
11) Explain how microorganisms return carbon to the atmosphere. ☐

Decay (p.114-115) ☐

12) Explain why temperature affects the rate of decay. ☐
13) Is biogas produced by aerobic or anaerobic decay? ☐

Human Impacts on the Planet (p.116-119) ☐

14) Suggest why it's important to have high biodiversity in an ecosystem. ☐
15) Name two gases linked to global warming. ☐
16) Give an example of how global warming could reduce biodiversity. ☐
17) Why might humans carry out deforestation? ☐
18) Explain why the destruction of peat bogs adds more carbon dioxide to the atmosphere. ☐
19) How can recycling programmes help to protect ecosystems? ☐

Trophic Levels and Biomass (p.120-122) ☐

20) What is a trophic level? ☐
21) In which trophic level are the tertiary consumers found? ☐
22) Does the bottom bar on a pyramid of biomass represent the tertiary consumer or the producer? ☐
23) Approximately what percentage of biomass is lost between trophic levels? ☐

Food Security and Biotechnology (p.123-124) ☐

24) Give an example of a factor that can affect food security. ☐
25) How can fish stocks be maintained at a sustainable level? ☐
26) What is mycoprotein? ☐
27) How can bacteria be used to produce human insulin? ☐

Measuring Substances

Get your lab coats on, it's time to find out about the skills you'll need in experiments...

Use the Right Apparatus to Take Readings

1) Mass

To weigh a solid, start by putting the container you are weighing your substance into on a balance. Set the balance to exactly zero and then weigh out the correct amount of your substance. Easy peasy.

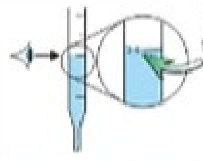
2) Temperature

You can use a thermometer to measure the temperature of a solution. Make sure that the bulb of the thermometer is completely submerged in the solution and that you wait for the temperature to stabilise before you take your initial reading. Read off the scale on the thermometer at eye level to make sure it's correct.

When you're reading off a scale, write down the value of the graduation that the amount is closest to.

3) Volume of a Liquid

There's more than one way to measure the volume of a liquid. Whichever method you use, always read the volume from the bottom of the meniscus (the curved upper surface of the liquid) when it's at eye level.

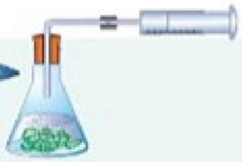


Read volume from here — the bottom of the meniscus.

- Using a pipette — Pipettes are used to suck up and transfer volumes of liquid between containers. Dropping pipettes are used to transfer drops of liquid. Graduated pipettes are used to transfer accurate volumes. A pipette filler is attached to the end of a graduated pipette, to control the amount of liquid being drawn up.
- Using a measuring cylinder — Measuring cylinders come in all different sizes. Make sure you choose one that's the right size for the measurement you want to make. It's no good using a huge 1 dm^3 cylinder to measure out 2 cm^3 of a liquid — the graduations will be too big, and you'll end up with massive errors. It'd be much better to use one that measures up to 10 cm^3.

4) Volume of a Gas

1) To accurately measure the volume of gas, you should use a gas syringe.
2) Alternatively, you can use an upturned measuring cylinder filled with water. The gas will displace the water so you can read the volume off the scale.
3) Other methods to measure the amount of gas include counting the bubbles produced or measuring the length of a gas bubble drawn along a tube (see p.59). These methods are less accurate, but will give you relative amounts of gas to compare results.
4) When you're measuring a gas, you need to make sure that the equipment is set up so that none of the gas can escape, otherwise your results won't be accurate.



5) pH

The method you should use to measure pH depends on what your experiment is.

1) Indicators are dyes that change colour depending on whether they're in an acid or an alkali. You use them by adding a couple of drops of the indicator to the solution you're interested in. Universal indicator is a mixture of indicators that changes colour gradually as pH changes. It's useful for estimating the pH of a solution based on its colour.
2) Indicator paper is useful if you don't want to colour the entire solution that you're testing. It changes colour depending on the pH of the solution it touches. You can also hold a piece of damp indicator paper in a gas sample to test its pH.
3) pH meters have a digital display that gives an accurate value for the pH of a solution.

Blue litmus paper turns red in acidic conditions and red litmus paper turns blue in alkaline conditions.

Experimentus apparatus...

Wizardry won't help you here, unfortunately. It's best you just get your head down and learn this stuff.

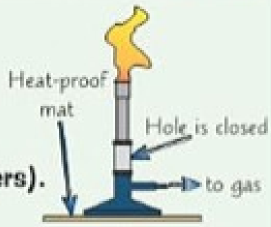
Heating, Safety and Ethics

More lab stuff coming up next — a bit about heating things up and then some important things to think about...

Bunsen Burners Have a Naked Flame

Bunsen burners are good for heating things quickly. But you need to make sure you're using them safely:

- You should always use a Bunsen burner on a heat-proof mat.
- If your Bunsen burner is alight but not heating anything, make sure you close the hole so that the flame becomes yellow and clearly visible.
- Use the blue flame to heat things. If you're heating a vessel in the flame, hold it at the top (e.g. with tongs) and point the opening away from yourself (and others).
- If you're heating something over the flame (e.g. a beaker of water), you should put a tripod and gauze over the Bunsen burner before you light it, and place the vessel on this.



The Temperature of Electric Water Baths & Electric Heaters Can Be Set

1) A water bath is a container filled with water that can be heated to a specific temperature. A simple water bath can be made by heating a beaker of water over a Bunsen burner and monitoring the temperature with a thermometer. However, it is difficult to keep the temperature of the water constant.
2) An electric water bath will monitor and adjust the temperature for you. Here's how you use one:
   - Set the temperature on the water bath, and allow the water to heat up.
   - To make sure it's reached the right temperature, use a thermometer.
   - Place the vessel containing your substance in the water bath using test tube holders or tongs. The level of water outside the vessel should be just above the level of the substance in the vessel.
   - The substance will then be warmed to the same temperature as the water. As the substance in the vessel is surrounded by water, the heating is very even.
3) Electric heaters are often made up of a metal plate that can be heated to a specified temperature. The vessel containing the substance you want to heat is placed on top of the hot plate. The vessel is only heated from below, so you'll usually have to stir the substance inside to make sure it's heated evenly.

Make Sure You're Working Safely in the Lab

1) Before you start any experiment, make sure you know about any safety precautions to do with your method or the chemicals you're using. You need to follow any instructions that your teacher gives you carefully. The chemicals you're using may be hazardous — for example, they might be flammable (catch fire easily), or they might irritate or burn your skin if it comes into contact with them.
2) Make sure that you're wearing sensible clothing when you're in the lab (e.g. open shoes won't protect your feet from spillages). When you're doing an experiment, you should wear a lab coat to protect your skin and clothing. Depending on the experiment, you may need to also wear safety goggles and gloves.
3) You also need to be aware of general safety in the lab, e.g. keep anything flammable away from lit Bunsen burners, don't directly touch any hot equipment, handle glassware carefully so it doesn't break, etc.

You Need to Think About Ethical Issues In Your Experiments

1) Any organisms involved in your investigations need to be treated safely and ethically.
2) Animals need to be treated humanely — they should be handled carefully and any wild animals captured for studying (e.g. during an investigation of the distribution of an organism) should be returned to their original habitat.
3) Any animals kept in the lab should also be cared for in a humane way, e.g. they should not be kept in overcrowded conditions.
4) If you are carrying out an experiment involving other students (e.g. investigating the effect of caffeine on reaction time), they should not be forced to participate against their will or feel pressured to take part.

Potometers and Microscopes

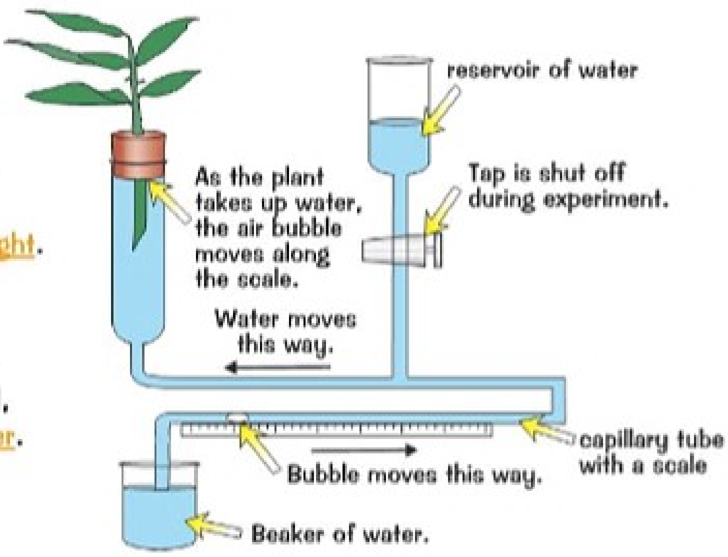
We're on to potometers and microscopes now, oh my...

Potometers Should Be Set Up Underwater

A potometer is a special piece of apparatus used to measure the water uptake by a plant. Here's how to set one up:

If there are air bubbles in the apparatus or the plant's xylem it will affect your results.

1) Cut a shoot underwater to prevent air from entering the xylem. Cut it at a slant to increase the surface area available for water uptake.
2) Assemble the potometer in water and insert the shoot under water, so no air can enter.
3) Remove the apparatus from the water but keep the end of the capillary tube submerged in a beaker of water.
4) Check that the apparatus is watertight and airtight.
5) Dry the leaves, allow time for the shoot to acclimatise and then shut the tap.
6) Remove the end of the capillary tube from the beaker of water until one air bubble has formed, then put the end of the tube back into the water.
7) A potometer can be used to estimate the transpiration rate of a plant. There's more about this on page 44.



reservoir of water
As the plant takes up water, the air bubble moves along the scale.
Tap is shut off during experiment.
Water moves this way.
capillary tube with a scale
Bubble moves this way.
Beaker of water.

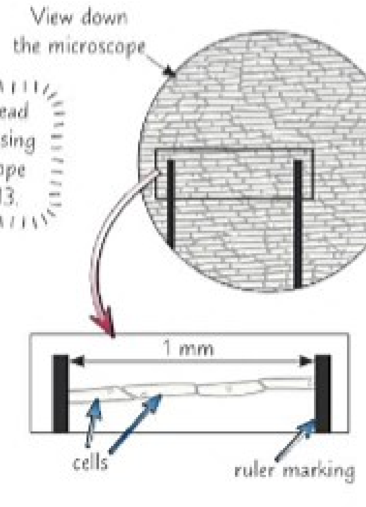
You Can Measure the Size of a Single Cell

When viewing cells under a microscope, you might need to work out their size.

To work out the size of a single cell:

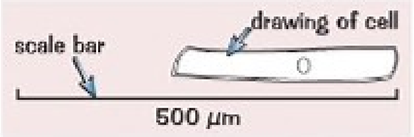
1) Place a clear, plastic ruler on top of your microscope slide. Clip the ruler and slide onto the stage.
2) Select the objective lens that gives an overall magnification of x 100.
3) Adjust the focus to get a clear image of the cells.
4) Move the ruler so that the cells are lined up along 1 mm. Then count the number of cells along this 1 mm sample.
5) 1 mm = 1000 μm. So to calculate the length of a single cell in μm, you just need to divide 1000 μm by the number of cells in the sample. E.g. if you counted 4 cells in 1 mm, the length of a single cell would be: 1000 ÷ 4 = 250 μm

You can read all about using a microscope on page 13.



View down the microscope
1 mm
cells
ruler marking

Use the Cell Size to Work out the Length of a Scale Bar



drawing of cell
scale bar
500 μm

1) If you draw a diagram of a cell you've observed under a microscope, you might want to include a scale bar.
2) Once you know the size of one cell, you can use it to calculate how long your scale bar should be.
3) To draw a 500 μm scale bar, just use this formula:

$$\text{scale bar length } (\mu\text{m}) = \frac{\text{drawn length of cell } (\mu\text{m}) \times 500}{\text{actual length of cell } (\mu\text{m})}$$

Single cell, looking for love...

These techniques might seem a bit tricky at first, but if you practice them they'll become second nature. Honest.

Sampling

I love samples... especially when I'm a bit peckish in the supermarket and they're handing out free cheese. Unfortunately, this page isn't about those samples. It's a lot more useful than that...

Sampling Should be Random

1) When you're investigating a population, it's generally not possible to study every single organism in the population. This means that you need to take samples of the population you're interested in.
2) The sample data will be used to draw conclusions about the whole population, so it's important that it accurately represents the whole population.
3) To make sure a sample represents the population, it should be random.

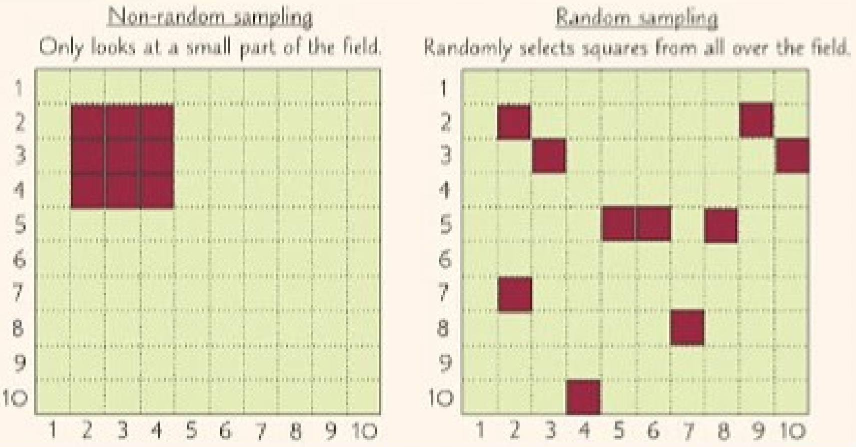
If a sample doesn't represent the population as a whole, it's said to be biased.

Organisms Should Be Sampled At Random Sites in an Area

1) If you're interested in the distribution of an organism in an area, or its population size, you can take population samples in the area you're interested in using quadrats or transects (see pages 110-111).
2) If you only take samples from one part of the area, your results will be biased — they may not give an accurate representation of the whole area.
3) To make sure that your sampling isn't biased, you need to use a method of choosing sampling sites in which every site has an equal chance of being chosen. For example:

If you're looking at plant species in a field...

1) Divide the field into a grid.
2) Label the grid along the bottom and up the side with numbers.
3) Use a random number generator (on a computer or calculator) to select coordinates, e.g. (2,6).
4) Take your samples at these coordinates.


Non-random sampling
Only looks at a small part of the field.
Random sampling
Randomly selects squares from all over the field.
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10

Health Data Should be Taken from Randomly Selected People

1) As mentioned above, it's not practical (or even possible) to study an entire human population.
2) You need to use random sampling to choose members of the population you're interested in. For example:

A health professional is investigating how many people diagnosed with Type 2 diabetes in a particular country also have heart disease:

1) All the people who have been diagnosed with Type 2 diabetes in the country of interest are identified by hospital records. In total, there are 270 196 people.
2) These people are assigned a number between 1 and 270 196.
3) A random number generator is used to choose the sample group (e.g. it selects the individuals #72 063, #11 822, #193 123, etc.)
4) The proportion of people in the sample that have heart disease can be used to estimate the total number of people with Type 2 diabetes that also have heart disease.

'Eeny, meeny, miny, moe' just doesn't cut it any more...

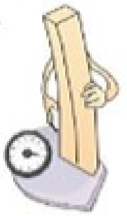
Sampling is an important part of an investigation. It needs to be done randomly, or the data won't be worth much.

Comparing Results

Being able to compare your results is really important. Here are some ways you might do it. I spoil you.

Percentage Change Allows you to Compare Results

1) When investigating the change in a variable, you may want to compare results that didn't have the same initial value. For example, you may want to compare the change in mass of potato cylinders left in different concentrations of sugar solution that had different initial masses (see page 21).
2) One way to do this is to calculate the percentage change. You work it out like this:



$$\text{percentage (\%) change} = \frac{\text{final value} - \text{original value}}{\text{original value}} \times 100$$

EXAMPLE: A student is investigating the effect of the concentration of sugar solution on potato cells. She records the mass of potato cylinders before and after placing them in sugar solutions of different concentrations. The table on the right shows some of her results.

Which potato cylinder had the largest percentage change?

Potato cylinder	Concentration (mol/dm³)	Mass at start (g)	Mass at end (g)
1	0.0	7.5	8.7
2	1.0	8.0	6.8

1) Stick each set of results into the equation:

$$\% \text{ change} = \frac{\text{final value} - \text{original value}}{\text{original value}} \times 100$$

$$1.\ \frac{8.7 - 7.5}{7.5} \times 100 = 16\%$$

The mass at the start is the original value. The mass at the end is the final value.

$$2.\ \frac{6.8 - 8.0}{8.0} \times 100 = -15\%$$

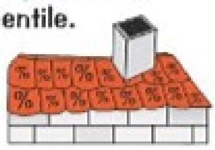
Here, the mass has decreased so the percentage change is negative.

2) Compare the results. 16% is greater than 15%, so the potato cylinder in the 0.0 mol/dm³ sugar solution had the largest percentage change.

Percentiles Tell you Where in Your Data Set a Data Point Lies

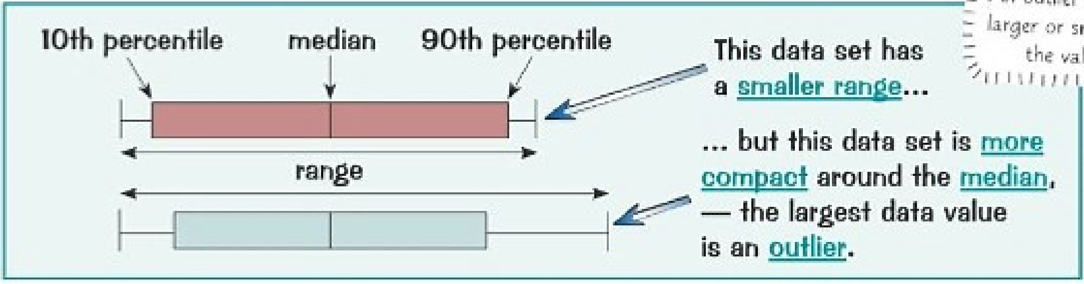
1) Percentiles are useful if you want to compare the value of one data point to the rest of your data.
2) To find a percentile, you rank your data from smallest to largest, then divide it into one hundred equal chunks. Each chunk is one percentile.
3) This means that each percentile represents one percent of the data, and so the value of a percentile tells you what percentage of the data has a value lower than the data points in that percentile.

E.g. Mike the Meerkat is in the 90th percentile for height in his gang. This means that 90% of the gang are shorter than Mike.



4) Percentiles can be used to give a more realistic idea of the spread of data than the range (see p.6) — by finding the range between the 10th and 90th percentiles in a data set (the middle 80% of the data), you can look at the spread of the data while ignoring any outlying results.

An outlier is a value that's much larger or smaller than the rest of the values in a data set.



This data set has a smaller range...

... but this data set is more compact around the median, — the largest data value is an outlier.

The median is the middle value (see p.6). It's also the 50th percentile.

Percentage change in how much I love maths after this page — 0%

Aaaand that's the end of Practical Skills, folks. Go forth, and science like you've never scienced before...

Answers

p.11 — Cells

Q1 Any two from: e.g. prokaryotic cells are smaller than eukaryotic cells ***[1 mark]***. / Prokaryotic cells don't have mitochondria but eukaryotic cells do ***[1 mark]***. / Prokaryotic cells don't have a true nucleus but eukaryotic cells do ***[1 mark]***. / Prokaryotic cells have circular DNA but eukaryotic cells don't ***[1 mark]***.

p.12 — Microscopy

Q1 real size = image size ÷ magnification
$= 7.5 \text{ mm} \div 100$
$= 0.075 \text{ mm}$ ***[1 mark]***
$0.075 \times 1000 = 75\ \mu\text{m}$ ***[1 mark]***

p.13 — More on Microscopy

Q1 To highlight objects within the sample by adding colour to them ***[1 mark]***.

p.14 — Cell Differentiation and Specialisation

Q1 E.g. they have few subcellular structures. / They're joined end to end. / They're long. ***[1 mark]***

Q2 The cell has a hair-like shape, which gives it a large surface area ***[1 mark]*** to absorb water and minerals from the soil ***[1 mark]***.

p.15 — Chromosomes and Mitosis

Q1 The cell has to increase the amount of its subcellular structures ***[1 mark]*** and duplicate its DNA ***[1 mark]***.

p.16 — Binary Fission

Q1 Lots of nutrients ***[1 mark]*** and a warm environment ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 3 hours $= 60 \times 3 = 180$ minutes
$180 \div 30 = 6$ divisions ***[1 mark]***
$2^6 = 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2$
$= 64$ cells ***[1 mark]***

p.18 — Culturing Microorganisms

Q1 a) A ***[1 mark]***

b) diameter = 13 mm
radius $= 13 \div 2 = 6.5$ mm ***[1 mark]***
$\pi r^2 = \pi \times 6.5^2 = 132.7...$
$= 133 \text{ mm}^2$
[1 mark]

c) E.g. a disc soaked in sterile water ***[1 mark]***.

d) To show that any difference in the growth of the bacteria is only due to the effect of the antiseptic ***[1 mark]***.

p.19 — Stem Cells

Q1 Copies of the plant can be made by taking stem cells from the meristem of the plant ***[1 mark]*** and growing them into new, genetically identical plants (clones) ***[1 mark]***.

p.20 — Diffusion

Q1 a) The ink will diffuse / spread out through the water ***[1 mark]***. This is because the ink particles will move from where is a higher concentration of them (the drop of ink) to where there is a lower concentration of them (the surrounding water) ***[1 mark]***.

b) The ink particles will diffuse / spread out faster ***[1 mark]***.

p.21 — Osmosis

Q1 Water will move out of the piece of potato by osmosis ***[1 mark]***, so its mass will decrease ***[1 mark]***.

p.22 — Active Transport

Q1 Active transport allows nutrients such as glucose to move from a lower concentration in the gut to a higher concentration in the blood (against the concentration gradient) ***[1 mark]***.

p.23 — Exchange Surfaces

Q1 Surface area:
$(2 \times 2) \times 2 = 8$
$(2 \times 1) \times 4 = 8$
$8 + 8 = 16\ \mu\text{m}^2$ ***[1 mark]***
Volume:
$2 \times 2 \times 1 = 4\ \mu\text{m}^3$ ***[1 mark]***
So the surface area to volume ratio is 16 : 4, or 4 : 1 ***[1 mark]***.

p.24 — Exchanging Substances

Q1 E.g. they have a large surface area. / They have a moist lining for dissolving gases. / They have very thin walls. / They have a good blood supply. ***[1 mark]***

Q2 The surface of the small intestine is covered with small projections/villi ***[1 mark]***.

p.25 — More on Exchanging Substances

Q1 Any two from: e.g. it is made up of gill filaments which give a large surface area. / Each gill filament is covered in lamellae, which further increases the surface area. / The lamellae have a thin surface layer of cells. / The lamellae have lots of capillaries. / A large concentration gradient is maintained between the water and the blood. ***[2 marks]***

p.27— Cell Organisation

Q1 That it is made up of different tissues ***[1 mark]*** that work together to perform a particular function ***[1 mark]***.

p.28 — Enzymes

Q1 If the pH is too high or too low, it can interfere with the bonds holding the enzyme together. This changes the shape of the active site ***[1 mark]*** and denatures the enzyme ***[1 mark]***.

p.29 — Investigating Enzymatic Reactions

Q1 $33 \div 60 = 0.55 \text{ cm}^3\text{/s}$ ***[1 mark]***

p.30 — Enzymes and Digestion

Q1 Bile is alkaline, so it neutralises the stomach acid and makes conditions in the small intestine alkaline ***[1 mark]***. The enzymes of the small intestine work best in these alkaline conditions ***[1 mark]***. It also emulsifies fats/breaks down fats into tiny droplets ***[1 mark]***. This gives a bigger surface area of fat for the enzyme lipase to work on, making digestion faster ***[1 mark]***.

p.31 — More on Enzymes and Digestion

Q1 Stomach ***[1 mark]***, pancreas ***[1 mark]*** and small intestine ***[1 mark]***.

p.32 — Food Tests

Q1 iodine solution ***[1 mark]***

p.33 — The Lungs

Q1 $495 \div 12$
$= 41$ breaths per minute. ***[1 mark]***

p.34 — Circulatory System — The Heart

Q1 The right ventricle ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 They supply oxygenated blood to the heart itself ***[1 mark]***.

p.35 — Circulatory System — Blood Vessels

Q1 They have a big lumen to help the blood flow despite the low pressure ***[1 mark]*** and they have valves to keep the blood flowing in the right direction ***[1 mark]***.

p.36 — Circulatory System — Blood

Q1 They help the blood to clot at a wound ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 They have a large surface area for absorbing oxygen ***[1 mark]***. They don't have a nucleus, which allows more room for carrying oxygen ***[1 mark]***. They contain haemoglobin, which can combine with oxygen in the lungs and release it in body tissues ***[1 mark]***.

p.37 — Cardiovascular Disease

Q1 a) Stents can be inserted into the coronary arteries to keep them open ***[1 mark]***. This ensures that the supply of oxygenated blood to the heart isn't interrupted ***[1 mark]***.

b) Any two from: e.g. there is a risk of complications such as a heart attack during the operation. / There's a risk of infection from surgery. / There's a risk of the patient developing a blood clot/thrombosis near the stent ***[2 marks]***.

p.38 — More on Cardiovascular Disease

Q1 a) The heart valves might not be able to open fully, meaning that less blood can flow through them ***[1 mark]***. They can also become leaky, meaning that blood is able to flow in both directions ***[1 mark]***.

b) By replacing the valve with a biological or mechanical valve ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 Any one from: e.g. surgery to fit an artificial heart can lead to bleeding and infection. / Parts of the artificial heart could wear out. / The electric motor could fail. / Blood doesn't flow through the heart as smoothly, which could cause clots and lead to strokes. / The patient has to take blood thinning drugs to prevent blood clots, which could cause problems with bleeding if they're hurt in an accident ***[1 mark]***.

p.39 — Health and Disease

Q1 The state of physical and mental wellbeing ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 It can be spread from person to person ***[1 mark]***.

p.40 — Risk Factors for Non-communicable Diseases

Q1 The presence of certain substances in the body. / The presence of certain substances in the environment ***[1 mark]***.

p.41 — Cancer

Q1 Body cells dividing out of control ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 Any three from: e.g. smoking / obesity / UV exposure / viral infection ***[1 mark for each correct answer, up to 3 marks]***.

p.42 — Plant Cell Organisation

Q1 Meristem tissue is found at the growing tips of roots and shoots ***[1 mark]*** and is able to differentiate into lots of different types of plant cell ***[1 mark]***.

p.43 — Transpiration and Translocation

Q1 Xylem is made up of dead cells joined together end to end ***[1 mark]*** with no end walls between them and a hole down the middle ***[1 mark]***. It is strengthened by lignin ***[1 mark]***.

Answers

p.44 — Transpiration and Stomata

Q1 As it gets darker, the stomata begin to close ***[1 mark]***. This means that very little water can escape ***[1 mark]*** and the rate of transpiration decreases ***[1 mark]***.

p.46 — Communicable Disease

Q1 Viruses replicate themselves by using the machinery of the cell they live in to produce many copies of themselves ***[1 mark]***. The cell will usually then burst, releasing all the new viruses ***[1 mark]***.

p.47 — Viral, Fungal and Protist Diseases

Q1 a red skin rash ***[1 mark]***

Q2 Using a fungicide ***[1 mark]*** and by stripping the plants of the affected leaves and destroying them ***[1 mark]***.

p.48 — Bacterial Diseases and Preventing Disease

Q1 Strains of the bacteria becoming resistant to antibiotics/penicillin ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 To prevent the contamination of food by disease-causing pathogens ***[1 mark]***.

p.49 — Fighting Disease

Q1 It is when white blood cells engulf foreign cells and digest them ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 They secrete mucus to trap pathogens ***[1 mark]***. They have cilia ***[1 mark]***, which waft the mucus up to the back of the throat where it can be swallowed ***[1 mark]***.

p.50 — Fighting Disease — Vaccination

Q1 antibodies ***[1 mark]***

p.51 — Fighting Disease — Drugs

Q1 bacteria ***[1 mark]***

p.52 — Developing Drugs

Q1 Whether the drug works and produces the effect you're looking for ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 To make sure that the drug doesn't have any harmful side effects when the body is working normally ***[1 mark]***.

Q3 To help to prevent false claims about the results ***[1 mark]***.

p.53 — Monoclonal Antibodies

Q1 A B-lymphocyte ***[1 mark]*** and a tumour cell ***[1 mark]***.

p.54 — More on Monoclonal Antibodies

Q1 A radioactive substance ***[1 mark]***, a toxic drug ***[1 mark]***, a chemical which stops cells growing and dividing ***[1 mark]***.

p.55 — Plant Diseases and Defences

Q1 It will have stunted growth ***[1 mark]***.

p.57 — Photosynthesis and Limiting Factors

Q1 Glucose ***[1 mark]*** and oxygen ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 Light intensity ***[1 mark]***, volume of CO_2 ***[1 mark]*** and amount of chlorophyll ***[1 mark]***.

p.60 — The Rate of Photosynthesis

Q1 E.g. light intensity ***[1 mark]***, CO_2 ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 $\text{light intensity} \propto \frac{1}{\text{distance}^2}$ ***[1 mark]***

p.61 — Respiration and Metabolism

Q1 Any two from: e.g. to build up larger molecules from smaller ones. / To contract muscles. / To keep body temperature steady. ***[1 mark]***

Q2 The sum of all of the reactions that happen in a cell or the body ***[1 mark]***.

p.62 — Aerobic and Anaerobic Respiration

Q1 Glucose ***[1 mark]*** and oxygen ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 fermentation ***[1 mark]***

p.63 — Exercise

Q1 Long periods of exercise ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 An oxygen debt is the amount of extra oxygen your body needs to react with the build up of lactic acid and remove it from the cells ***[1 mark]***

p.65 — Homeostasis

Q1 To maintain the right conditions for cells to function properly and for enzyme action ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 receptor (cell) ***[1 mark]***

p.66 — The Nervous System

Q1 Muscles ***[1 mark]***, glands ***[1 mark]***.

p.67 — Synapses and Reflexes

Q1 A rapid, automatic response to a stimulus that doesn't involve the conscious part of the brain ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 a) muscle ***[1 mark]***

b) The stimulus is detected by receptors ***[1 mark]***, which send impulses along a sensory neurone to the CNS ***[1 mark]***. The impulse is transferred to a relay neurone ***[1 mark]***. It is then transferred to a motor neurone and travels along it to the effector ***[1 mark]***.

p.68 — Investigating Reaction Time

Q1 242 + 256 + 253 + 249 + 235
= 1235 ***[1 mark]***
1235 ÷ 5 = 247 ms ***[1 mark]***

p.69 — The Brain

Q1 cerebellum ***[1 mark]***

p.70 — The Eye

Q1 cornea ***[1 mark]***

Q2 The ciliary muscles contract ***[1 mark]***, which slackens the suspensory ligaments ***[1 mark]***. The lens becomes fat/more curved ***[1 mark]***. This increases the amount by which it refracts light, so the image is focused on the retina ***[1 mark]***.

p.71 — Correcting Vision Defects

Q1 The lens is the wrong shape / refracts the light too much, or the eyeball is too long ***[1 mark]***. So images of distant objects are brought into focus in front of the retina ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 The lenses refract the light rays so they focus on the retina ***[1 mark]***.

p.72 — Controlling Body Temperature

Q1 thermoregulatory centre/hypothalamus ***[1 mark]***

p.73 — The Endocrine System

Q1 Because it produces many hormones that act on other glands to regulate body conditions ***[1 mark]***.

p.74 — Controlling Blood Glucose

Q1 The pancreas secretes insulin ***[1 mark]***. Insulin causes glucose to move from the blood into liver and muscle cells ***[1 mark]***. In the cells, glucose is turned into glycogen for storage ***[1 mark]***.

p.75 — The Kidneys

Q1 The kidneys will reabsorb less water ***[1 mark]***, so too much water may be lost from the body in urine ***[1 mark]***.

p.76 — Kidney Failure

Q1 It allows ions and waste substances to diffuse out of the blood into the dialysis fluid ***[1 mark]***, but not large molecules like proteins (so they won't be lost from the blood) ***[1 mark]***.

p.77 — Puberty and the Menstrual Cycle

Q1 FSH/follicle-stimulating hormone ***[1 mark]***

Q2 testes ***[1 mark]***

p.78 — Controlling Fertility

Q1 The pill/oral contraceptives ***[1 mark]***.
The contraceptive patch ***[1 mark]***.

p.79 — More on Controlling Fertility

Q1 They stimulate several eggs to mature ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 E.g. it doesn't always work. / It can be expensive. / Too many eggs can be stimulated, resulting in unexpected multiple pregnancies. ***[1 mark]***

p.80 — Adrenaline and Thyroxine

Q1 thyroid gland ***[1 mark]***

Q2 When the high level of thyroxine is detected, the secretion of TSH from the pituitary gland is inhibited ***[1 mark]***. This reduces the amount of thyroxine released from the thyroid gland ***[1 mark]***, so the level in the blood falls back towards normal ***[1 mark]***.

p.81 — Plant Hormones

Q1 More auxin accumulates on the side of the shoot that's in the shade ***[1 mark]***. This causes the shaded side of the shoot to elongate faster ***[1 mark]*** so the shoot bends towards the light.

p.82 — Commercial Uses of Plant Hormones

Q1 E.g. to stimulate seed germination / to control dormancy / to stimulate flowering / to grow larger fruit ***[1 mark]***.

p.84 — DNA

Q1 A small section of DNA found on a chromosome ***[1 mark]*** that codes for a particular sequence of amino acids ***[1 mark]*** that are put together to make a specific protein ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 The entire set of genetic material in an organism ***[1 mark]***.

p.85 — The Structure of DNA and Protein Synthesis

Q1 A and T ***[1 mark]***.
C and G ***[1 mark]***.

p.86 — Mutations

Q1 A mutation is a random change in an organism's DNA ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 Mutations change the DNA base sequence ***[1 mark]***. This can alter the amino acids that the bases code for ***[1 mark]***. This can change the shape of the protein the amino acids make up, which can affect its function ***[1 mark]***.

Answers

p.87 — Reproduction

Q1 mitosis ***[1 mark]***

Q2 Because there are two parents, the offspring contain a mixture of their parents' genes ***[1 mark]***. This mixture of genetic information produces variation ***[1 mark]***.

p.88 — Meiosis

Q1 two ***[1 mark]***

p.89 — More on Reproduction

Q1 Any three from: e.g. there only needs to be one parent unlike sexual reproduction, which requires two. / It takes less energy than sexual reproduction because organisms don't need to find a mate. / It is faster than sexual reproduction. / Many identical offspring can be produced in favourable conditions. ***[1 mark for each correct answer, up to 3 marks]***

p.90 — X and Y Chromosomes

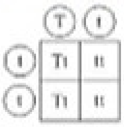
Q1 XX ***[1 mark]***

p.91 — Genetic Diagrams

Q1 Your genotype is the combination of alleles you have ***[1 mark]***. Your phenotype is the characteristics you have ***[1 mark]***.

p.92 — More Genetic Diagrams

Q1



long tailed : short tailed
1 : 1

[1 mark for correct gametes, 1 mark for correct offspring genotypes and 1 mark for correct ratio.]

p.93 — Inherited Disorders

Q1 Because the allele which causes cystic fibrosis is recessive ***[1 mark]***, so you have to have two recessive alleles to have the disorder ***[1 mark]***. Heterozygous people have one dominant and one recessive allele ***[1 mark]***.

p.94 — The Work of Mendel

Q1 Scientists of the time didn't have the background knowledge to properly understand Mendel's findings because they didn't know about genes, DNA and chromosomes ***[1 mark]***.

p.95 — Variation

Q1 Differences between members of the same species ***[1 mark]*** that have been caused by the environment/conditions something lives in ***[1 mark]***.

p.96 — Evolution

Q1 Any three from: The environment changes too quickly. / A new predator kills all the individuals. / A new disease kills all the individuals. / They can't compete with another species for food. / A catastrophic event (e.g. a volcanic eruption or collision with an astroid) kills all the individuals. ***[1 mark for each correct answer, up to 3 marks]***

p.97 — More About Evolution

Q1 It contradicted the common religious beliefs of the time that all life on earth was created by God ***[1 mark]***. Darwin lacked the evidence that he needed to convince many other scientists ***[1 mark]***. He also didn't have any explanation for why new beneficial characteristics appeared, or how they were passed on to offspring ***[1 mark]***.

p.98 — Selective Breeding

Q1 E.g. to produce plants with large or unusual flowers ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 Selective breeding reduces the gene pool ***[1 mark]***. This causes an increased chance of organisms inheriting harmful genetic defects ***[1 mark]***. There is also an increased chance that a population could be wiped out by a new disease ***[1 mark]***.

p.99 — Genetic Engineering

Q1 Benefit — E.g. the characteristics chosen for GM crops can mean that they have an increased yield. / GM crops can be engineered to contain certain nutrients, which some people in developing nations may lack from their diets ***[1 mark]***.
Concern — E.g. some people are not convinced that GM crops are safe and are concerned that we might not fully understand the effects of eating them on human health. / Some people say that growing GM crops will affect the number of wild flowers and insects that live in and around the crops. / There is concern that the transplanted genes could get out into the natural environment, which could lead to the creation of 'superweeds' ***[1 mark]***.

p.100 — Cloning

Q1 The nucleus is removed from an unfertilised egg ***[1 mark]*** and a complete set of chromosomes from an adult body cell is inserted into the egg ***[1 mark]***. The egg cell is then stimulated to divide to form an embryo by being given an electric shock ***[1 mark]***. The embryo is then implanted into an adult female ***[1 mark]***, where it develops into a clone of the original adult body cell ***[1 mark]***.

p.101 — Fossils

Q1 The microbes that cause decay can't survive in low oxygen conditions ***[1 mark]***, so the dead organisms are preserved rather than decayed ***[1 mark]***.

p.102 — Speciation

Q1 The two populations may be in different environments ***[1 mark]*** and so different characteristics will be beneficial ***[1 mark]***. Natural selection will work differently in each population so that individuals with the beneficial characteristics are more likely to survive and reproduce ***[1 mark]***.

p.103 — Antibiotic-Resistant Bacteria

Q1 Any one from: e.g. when the illness is only minor. / When the infection is being caused by a virus ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 Taking the complete course makes sure that all the bacteria are destroyed ***[1 mark]***. This means that there are none left to mutate and develop into antibiotic-resistant strains ***[1 mark]***.

p.104 — Classification

Q1 *Castor* ***[1 mark]***

p.106— Competition

Q1 The interaction of a community of organisms with the abiotic parts of their environment ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 Any three from: light / space / water / mineral ions ***[1 mark for each correct answer, up to 3 marks]***.

Q3 A community where all the species and environmental factors are in balance so that the population sizes are roughly constant ***[1 mark]***.

p.107 — Abiotic and Biotic Factors

Q1 Any four from: moisture level / light intensity / temperature / carbon dioxide level / wind intensity / wind direction / soil pH / mineral content of soil ***[1 mark for each correct answer, up to 4 marks]***.

Q2 Any two from: availability of food / competition for resources / new pathogens ***[1 mark for each correct answer, up to 2 marks]***.

p.108 — Adaptations

Q1 a) A behavioural adaptation ***[1 mark]***.

b) E.g. it has flippers ***[1 mark]*** so it can swim for food ***[1 mark]***. / A thick layer of fat ***[1 mark]*** so it retains heat ***[1 mark]***. / A low surface area to volume ratio ***[1 mark]*** so it retains heat ***[1 mark]***.

p.109 — Food Chains

Q1 a) grass ***[1 mark]***

b) three ***[1 mark]***

c) grasshopper ***[1 mark]***

d) The population of grasshoppers could increase ***[1 mark]*** as there's nothing to eat them ***[1 mark]***. The population of snakes could decrease ***[1 mark]*** as there's nothing for them to eat ***[1 mark]***.

p.110 — Using Quadrats

Q1 0.75 × 4 = 3 buttercups per m^2 ***[1 mark]***.
3 × 1200 = 3600 buttercups in total ***[1 mark]***.

p.111 — Using Transects

Q1 A line used to help find out how organisms are distributed across an area ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 They could mark out a line across the field, from one corner to the other ***[1 mark]***. Then they could count all of the dandelions that touch the line ***[1 mark]***.

Q3 You could estimate the percentage of the quadrat covered by the organisms ***[1 mark]***.

p.112 — Environmental Change & The Water Cycle

Q1 Any two from: e.g. a change in the availability of water / a change in temperature / a change in atmospheric gases ***[1 mark for each correct answer, up to 2 marks]***.

Q2 a) By evaporation / transpiration ***[1 mark]***.

b) By providing them with fresh water ***[1 mark]***.

p.113 — The Carbon Cycle

Q1 Microorganisms/detritus feeders break them down/digest them ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 By green plants and algae in photosynthesis ***[1 mark]***.

p.114 — Decay

Q1 Oxygen availability ***[1 mark]***, water availability ***[1 mark]*** and the number of microorganisms present ***[1 mark]***.

Answers

p.115 — Investigating Decay

Q1 Rate = $\frac{1000}{\text{time}}$

Rate = $\frac{1000}{280}$ = 3.57 s^{-1} ***[1 mark]***

p.116 — Biodiversity and Waste Management

Q1 The variety of different species of organisms on Earth, or within an ecosystem ***[1 mark]***.

p.117 — Global Warming

Q1 Global warming causes higher temperatures, which cause ice to melt and seawater to expand ***[1 mark]***. This causes the sea level to rise ***[1 mark]***, which could lead to flooding of low-lying land and therefore the loss of habitats ***[1 mark]***.

p.118 — Deforestation and Land Use

Q1 Trees 'lock up' some of the carbon that they absorb during photosynthesis, so if lots of trees are removed, less carbon will be locked up from the atmosphere ***[1 mark]***. If the land is cleared by burning the trees, this means that lots of carbon dioxide is released ***[1 mark]***. Microorganisms feeding on leftover dead wood release carbon dioxide as a waste product of respiration ***[1 mark]***.

p.119 — Maintaining Ecosystems and Biodiversity

Q1 Hedgerows and field margins can be reintroduced around single-crop fields ***[1 mark]***. These provide a habitat for organisms that would otherwise be unable to live in the area ***[1 mark]***.

Q2 Breeding programmes breed endangered animals in captivity to make sure the species survives if they die out in the wild ***[1 mark]***. Individuals can sometimes be released into the wild to boost or re-establish a population ***[1 mark]***.

p.120 — Trophic Levels

Q1 They secrete enzymes that break down the dead material into small soluble food molecules ***[1 mark]***.

p.121 — Pyramids of Biomass

Q1 The relative mass of living material at each trophic level in a food chain ***[1 mark]***.

p.122 — Biomass Transfer

Q1 Any two from: e.g. organisms don't always eat every single part of the organism they're consuming. / Organisms don't absorb all of the material in the food they ingest. / Some of the biomass is converted into other substances and released as waste.
[1 mark for each correct answer, up to 2 marks]

Q2 110 ÷ 995 × 100 = 11.1% ***[1 mark]***

p.123 — Food Security and Farming

Q1 The movement of livestock can be restricted ***[1 mark]*** and they can be kept in a temperature-controlled environment ***[1 mark]***. This means that they use less energy moving around and controlling their own body temperature ***[1 mark]***, so more energy is available for growth ***[1 mark]***.

p.124 — Biotechnology

Q1 A genetically modified rice crop ***[1 mark]*** that has been genetically engineered to have a higher nutritional value/produce a chemical that's converted to vitamin A in the body ***[1 mark]***.

Index

A
abiotic factors 107
abstinence 78
accommodation 70
accuracy (of results) 5
active sites 28
active transport 22
adaptations 108
adrenal glands 73, 80
adrenaline 80
adult cell cloning 100
aerobic respiration 62
alleles 91
alveoli 24, 33
ammonia 75
amylase 29-31
anaerobic respiration 62
ancestors 104
animal cells 11
anomalous results 5
antibiotic resistance 51, 103
antibiotics 51, 103
  investigating the effects of 17
antibodies 36, 49
anti-diuretic hormone (ADH) 75
antimicrobials 49
antiretroviral drugs 47
antitoxins 36, 49
aorta 34
apparatus 126
Archaea 104
arteries 35
artificial blood 38
artificial hearts 38
asexual reproduction 87, 89
aspirin 51
atria 34
auxins 81, 82

B
bacteria 11, 16, 17, 46, 48, 104
balances 126
bar charts 6
barrier methods (of contraception) 78
basal metabolic rate 80
behavioural adaptations 108
Benedict's reagent 32
benign tumours 41
bias 2
bile 30
binary fission 16
binomial system 104
biodiversity 116-119
  maintenance of 119
biogas 114
biological heart valves 38
biomass 122
biomass transfer 122
biotechnology 124
biotic factors 107
Biuret test 32
blind studies 52
body temperature 72
brain 69
breathing rate 33
bronchi 33
bronchioles 33
Bunsen burners 127

C
caffeine (effect on reaction time) 68
cancer 54
capillaries 35
carbohydrases 30
carbon cycle 113
catalysts 28
categoric data 6
cell
  cycle 15
  division 15, 16
  elongation 81
  membranes 11, 20
  walls 11
cells 11
  drawing 13
  specialised 14
central nervous system (CNS) 66, 67
cerebellum 69
cerebral cortex 69
chlorophyll 11, 57
chloroplasts 11, 57
cholesterol 37
chromosomes 15, 84
  X and Y 90
cilia 49
ciliary muscles 70
class (classification) 104
classification 104
climate change 117
clinical trials 52
cloning 100
communicable diseases 39, 46
communities 106
complementary base pairing 85
computational models 1
concave lenses 71
concentration gradients 20
conclusions 9
condensation 112
condoms 48, 78
contact lenses 71
contraception 78
control variables 4
convex lenses 71
corneas 70
coronary arteries 34
coronary heart disease 37
correlation 7, 9
cover slip (slides) 13
cuttings 82, 100
cystic fibrosis 93
cytoplasm 11

D
Darwin, Charles 96, 97
decay 113-115
  investigating 115
  rate of 114
decomposers 120
defences (of plants) 55
deforestation 118

Index

deletions (mutations) 86
dependent variables 4
detritus feeders 113
diabetes 74
dialysis 76
diaphragm (thorax) 33
diaphragms (contraceptive) 78
differentiation 14, 27
diffusion 20, 21, 23-25
digestive enzymes 30
digestive system 27, 31
digitalis 51
discrete data 6
distribution of organisms 110-112
DNA 15, 84, 85
  nucleotides 85
dormancy (in seeds) 82
dosage 52
double-blind studies 52
double circulatory systems 33
drugs 51, 52
  development of 52

E
ecosystems 106
  maintenance of 119
effectors 65, 66
efficacy (of drugs) 52
electric heaters 127
electron microscopes 12
embryo screening 93
embryo transplants 100
endocrine system 73
endothermic reactions 57
environmental changes 112
environmental variation 95
enzymes 28-31
epidermal tissue 42
errors 5
ethene (in plants) 82
ethics (in investigations) 127
Eukaryota 104
eukaryotes 11, 46
evaluations 10
evaporation 112
evolutionary trees 104
evolution by natural selection 96, 97, 102
exchange surfaces 23-25
exercise 63
exothermic reactions 61
extinction 96
eyes 70, 71

F
fair tests 4
family (classification) 104
family trees 92
farming 123
fatty acids 30
fermentation 62
fertility 78, 79
fertility treatments 79
fight or flight response 80
filtration (kidneys) 75
Fleming, Alexander 51
flowering 82
focusing 70
follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) 77, 79
food chains 109, 120, 121
food poisoning 48
food production 123
food security 123
fossils 101
functional adaptations 108
fungi 46, 47

G
gall bladder 31
gamete fusion 88
gametes 87, 88
gas exchange 24, 25
gas syringes 126
gene pools 98, 100
genes 15, 84
genetically modified crops 99
genetic
  diagrams 90-93
  disorders 93
  engineering 99, 124
  variants 86
  variation 95
genomes 84
genotypes 91
genus 104
geotropism 81
germination 82
gibberellin 82
gills 25
glands 73
global warming 117
glucagon 74
glucose
  in the blood 74
  test for 32
  uses in plants 57
glycerol 30
glycogen 74
gonorrhoea 48
gradients 7
graphs 7
gravitropism 81
greenhouse gases 117
greenhouses 60
guard cells 44
gullet 31

H
habitats 106
haemoglobin 36
hazards 3
heart 34
heart valves 38
hereditary units 94
heterozygous organisms 91
HIV 47
homeostasis 65
homozygous organisms 91
hormones 73
hybridoma cells 53
hyperopia 71
hypotheses 1, 4

I
immune system 49
independent variables 4
indicators 126
'induced fit' model 28
infertility 79
inhibition zones 17, 18
insertions (mutations) 86
insulin 74
intercepts (on a graph) 7
interdependence 106
intrauterine devices (IUDs) 78
inverse
  correlations 7
  proportion 60
  square law 60
in vitro fertilisation (IVF) 79
iodine test (for starch) 29
irises 70
iris reflex 70
IVF 79

K
kidney failure 76
kidneys 75, 76
kingdom (classification) 104

L
lactic acid 62, 63
Lamarck, Jean-Baptiste 97
lamellae 25
large intestine 31
laser eye surgery 71
leaves
  gas exchange 25
  tissues in 25
lenses 70, 71
light microscopes 12, 13
limiting factors (of photosynthesis) 57-59
line graphs 7
lines of best fit 7
Linnaean system 104
Linnaeus, Carl 104
lipases 30
lipids (test for) 32
liver 31, 74
'lock and key' model 28
long-sightedness 71
lungs 33
luteinising hormone (LH) 77, 79
lymphocytes 53

M
magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) 69
magnification 12
malaria 47
malignant tumours 41
mean (average) 6
mean division time 16
measles 47
measuring cylinders 126
mechanical heart valves 38
median 6
medulla (brain) 69
meiosis 88
Mendel, Gregor 94
menstrual cycle 77
meristem tissue 42
merpeople 92
metabolism 61
microorganisms 46
  culturing 17, 18
microscopes 12, 13
migration patterns 117
  human 84
mitochondria 11
mitosis 15, 88
mode 6
models (scientific) 1
monoclonal antibodies 53, 54
motor neurones 66, 67
MRI scanning 69
mRNA 85
MRSA 51, 103
mucus 49
muscle cells 14
muscle fatigue 63
mutations 86, 95
mycoprotein 124
myopia 71

N
natural selection 96, 102
negative correlations 7
negative feedback systems 65
  blood glucose 74
  body temperature 72
  thyroxine 80
  water content 75
nerve cells 14
nervous system 66, 67
neurones 66, 67
neuroscientists 69
non-coding DNA 85, 86
non-communicable diseases 39
nucleotides 85
nucleus 11

O
oestrogen 77, 78
optic nerve 70
order (classification) 104
organ donors 76
organs 27

Index

organ systems 27
osmosis 21
ovaries 73, 77
overfishing 123
ovulation 77
oxygen debt 63

P
pacemakers 34
painkillers 51
palisade mesophyll tissue 42
pancreas 31, 73, 74
parasites 46
partially permeable membranes 21
pathogens 46
pea plants 94
peat bogs 118
peer review 1, 52
pepsin 30, 31
percentage
  change 130
  cover 111
percentiles 130
Petri dishes 17
phagocytosis 36, 49
phenolphthalein 115
phenotypes 91
phenotype variation 96
phloem cells 14
phloem tubes 42, 43
pH meters 126
photosynthesis 57-59
  rate of 58, 59
phototropism 81
phylum (classification) 104
pipettes 126
pituitary gland 73, 77, 80
placebo effect 52
plant
  cells 11
  diseases 55
  growth 81, 82
  hormones 81, 82
plasma 36
plasmids 11, 99
platelets 36
pleural membranes 33
pollution 116
polydactyly 93
population (human) 116
positive correlations 7
potatoes 21
potometers 44, 128
preclinical testing 52
precipitation 112
precision (of results) 5
predator-prey cycles 109
predators 109
pregnancy tests 53
prey 109
primary consumers 109
producers 109
progesterone 77, 78
prokaryotes 11, 16
proteases 30
proteins 85
  function of 85
  test for 32
protists 46, 47
puberty 77
pulmonary artery 34
pulmonary vein 34
Punnett squares 90, 91
pupils 70
pyramids of biomass 121

Q
quadrats 110, 111

R
random
  errors 5
  sampling 129
range (of data) 6
rates of reaction 29
reaction times 68
receptors 65, 66
rectum 31
red blood cells 36
reflex arcs 67
relay neurones 67
repeatability (of data) 4, 5
replacement lens surgery 71
representational models 1

reproducibility (of data) 4, 5
resolution (microscopes) 12
respiration 61, 62
retinas 70
ribcage 33
ribosomes 11, 85
ripening (of fruit) 82
risk 3
risk factors 40
root hair cells 14, 22
rooting powder 82
roots 81
rose black spot 47
rounding numbers 6

S
safety 3, 127
salivary glands 31
Salmonella 48
sample size 4
sampling 129
sclera 70
secondary consumers 109
secondary sexual characteristics 77
selective breeding 98
selective reabsorption 75
sensory neurones 66, 67
sex hormones 77-79
sexually transmitted diseases 48
sexual reproduction 87, 89
shivering 72
shoots 81
short-sightedness 71
SI units 8
significant figures 6
slides 13
small intestine 31
specialised cells 14
speciation 96, 102
species 102, 104
  in classification 102
sperm cells 14, 77
spermicide 78
spinal cord 69
spongy mesophyll tissue 42
stains (microscope) 13
standard form 12
starch 29
  test for 32
statins 37
stem cells 19
stents 37
sterilisation (contraception) 78
stomach 31
stomata 25, 44
structural adaptations 108
subcellular structures 11, 14
substitutions (mutations) 86
Sudan III 32
sugars (test for) 32
superbugs 103
surface area to volume ratios 23
survival of the fittest 96
suspensory ligaments 70
sweat 72, 75
synapses 67
systematic errors 5

T
tables (of data) 6
target organs 73
temperature receptors 72
tertiary consumers 109
testes 73, 77
testosterone 77
theories 1
thermometers 126
thermoregulatory centre 72
thorax 33
three-domain system of classification 104
thyroid gland 73, 80
thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH) 80
thyroxine 80
tissue culture 82, 100
tissues 27
tobacco mosaic virus 47
toxicity (of drugs) 52
trachea 33
transects 111
transpiration 43, 44, 112
  rate 44
transplants (organ) 76
trophic levels 120-122
tumour markers 54
tumours 41
Type 1 diabetes 74
Type 2 diabetes 74

U
uncertainty 10
units 8
urea 75
urine 75

V
vaccination 48, 50
vacuoles 11
valid results 4
valves (heart) 34, 38
variables 4
variation 95
vasoconstriction 72
vasodilation 72
vectors 46, 48, 99
veins 35
vena cava 34
ventricles 34
villi 24
viruses 46, 47
vision defects 71
volumes (measuring) 126

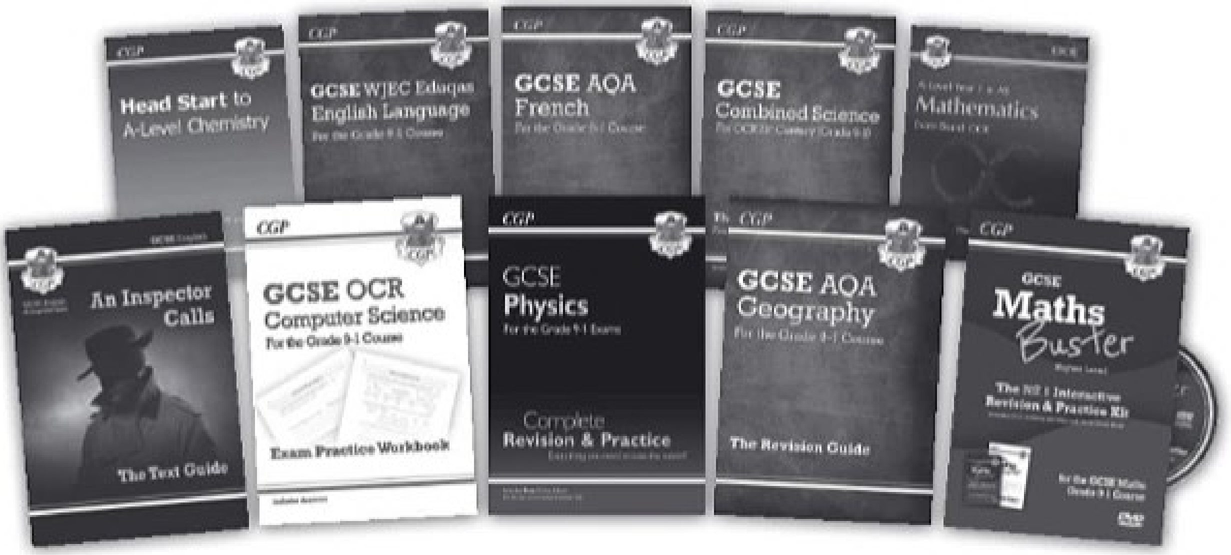
W
Wallace, Alfred Russel 102
waste management 116
water baths 127
water cycle 112
weed killers 82
white blood cells 36, 49
wizardry 126
Woese, Carl 104

X
X and Y chromosomes 90
xylem cells 14
xylem tubes 42, 43

Y
yeast cells 62

Z
zero errors 5

CGP books — they might just save your life…


Head Start to A-Level Chemistry
GCSE WJEC Eduqas English Language
GCSE AQA French
GCSE Combined Science
Mathematics
An Inspector Calls
The Text Guide
GCSE OCR Computer Science
Exam Practice Workbook
GCSE Physics
Complete Revision & Practice
GCSE AQA Geography
The Revision Guide
GCSE Maths Buster

OK, maybe not your *life*. But when it comes to exam revision, CGP are the undisputed champions. You can order any of our books (with next-day delivery!) from us, online or by phone:

www.cgpbooks.co.uk • 0800 1712 712

Or you'll find our range in any good bookshop, including:

amazon.co.uk WHSmith Waterstones

0617 - 16142

CGP

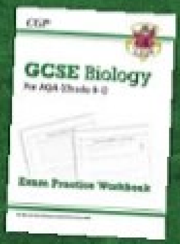
GCSE Biology is one tough subject...

But don't panic — this CGP book will make your revision a whole lot easier!

- **Cells, DNA, respiration, photosynthesis...**
  And the rest — we've covered everything!
- **Required practicals and maths skills?**
  Yep, they're in here too!
- **Exam practice questions on every page...**
  You bet — perfect for testing your skills!

It's so good, other Biology Revision Guides might as well be extinct ☺

P.S. Want to make sure you're **100% prepared** for the final exams?
Pick up CGP's matching **Exam Practice Workbook!**



CGP

GCSE Biology

Exam Practice Workbook

www.cgpbooks.co.uk